



Securing Today. Shaping Tomorrow.®

Jacqueline Chezar
*Executive Director and
Associate General Counsel*

55 Water Street
New York, New York 10041 0099

June 28, 2018

By Electronic Mail (rule-comments@sec.gov)

Robert W. Errett
Deputy Secretary
Securities and Exchange Commission
100 F Street, NE
Washington, DC 20549-1090

Re: Amendments No. 1 to File No. SR-DTC-2017-021 and File No. SR-DTC-2017-803

Dear Mr. Errett:

The Depository Trust Company filed Amendments No. 1 to File Nos. SR-DTC-2017-021 and SR-DTC-2017-803 on June 28, 2018, copies of which are enclosed.

Sincerely,



Jacqueline Chezar
Executive Director and
Associate General Counsel

Required fields are shown with yellow backgrounds and asterisks.

Page 1 of * 262	SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549 Form 19b 4		File No.* SR 2017 * 021	Amendment No. (req. for Amendments *) 1
Filing by The Depository Trust Company Pursuant to Rule 19b 4 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934				
Initial * <input type="checkbox"/>	Amendment * <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Withdrawal <input type="checkbox"/>	Section 19(b)(2) * <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Section 19(b)(3)(A) * <input type="checkbox"/>
			Section 19(b)(3)(B) * <input type="checkbox"/>	
			Rule	
Pilot <input type="checkbox"/>	Extension of Time Period for Commission Action * <input type="checkbox"/>	Date Expires * <input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> 19b 4(f)(1) <input type="checkbox"/> 19b 4(f)(2) <input type="checkbox"/> 19b 4(f)(3)	<input type="checkbox"/> 19b 4(f)(4) <input type="checkbox"/> 19b 4(f)(5) <input type="checkbox"/> 19b 4(f)(6)
Notice of proposed change pursuant to the Payment, Clearing, and Settlement Act of 2010			Security Based Swap Submission pursuant to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934	
Section 806(e)(1) * <input type="checkbox"/>		Section 806(e)(2) * <input type="checkbox"/>		Section 3C(b)(2) * <input type="checkbox"/>
Exhibit 2 Sent As Paper Document <input type="checkbox"/>		Exhibit 3 Sent As Paper Document <input type="checkbox"/>		
Description				
Provide a brief description of the action (limit 250 characters, required when Initial is checked *).				
<input type="text"/>				
Contact Information				
Provide the name, telephone number, and e mail address of the person on the staff of the self regulatory organization prepared to respond to questions and comments on the action.				
First Name *	Jacqueline	Last Name *	Chezar	
Title *	Executive Director and Associate General Counsel			
E mail *	<input type="text"/>			
Telephone *	<input type="text"/>	Fax	<input type="text"/>	
Signature				
Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934,				
has duly caused this filing to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned thereunto duly authorized.				
(Title *)				
Date	06/28/2018	Managing Director and Deputy General Counsel		
By	Lois J. Radisch	<input type="text"/>		
(Name *)				
NOTE: Clicking the button at right will digitally sign and lock this form. A digital signature is as legally binding as a physical signature, and once signed, this form cannot be changed.				

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

For complete Form 19b 4 instructions please refer to the EFFF website.

Form 19b-4 Information *

Add Remove View

The self regulatory organization must provide all required information, presented in a clear and comprehensible manner, to enable the public to provide meaningful comment on the proposal and for the Commission to determine whether the proposal is consistent with the Act and applicable rules and regulations under the Act.

Exhibit 1 - Notice of Proposed Rule Change *

Add Remove View

The Notice section of this Form 19b 4 must comply with the guidelines for publication in the Federal Register as well as any requirements for electronic filing as published by the Commission (if applicable). The Office of the Federal Register (OFR) offers guidance on Federal Register publication requirements in the Federal Register Document Drafting Handbook, October 1998 Revision. For example, all references to the federal securities laws must include the corresponding cite to the United States Code in a footnote. All references to SEC rules must include the corresponding cite to the Code of Federal Regulations in a footnote. All references to Securities Exchange Act Releases must include the release number, release date, Federal Register cite, Federal Register date, and corresponding file number (e.g., SR [SRO] xx xx). A material failure to comply with these guidelines will result in the proposed rule change being deemed not properly filed. See also Rule 0 3 under the Act (17 CFR 240.0 3)

Exhibit 1A- Notice of Proposed Rule Change, Security-Based Swap Submission, or Advance Notice by Clearing Agencies *

Add Remove View

The Notice section of this Form 19b 4 must comply with the guidelines for publication in the Federal Register as well as any requirements for electronic filing as published by the Commission (if applicable). The Office of the Federal Register (OFR) offers guidance on Federal Register publication requirements in the Federal Register Document Drafting Handbook, October 1998 Revision. For example, all references to the federal securities laws must include the corresponding cite to the United States Code in a footnote. All references to SEC rules must include the corresponding cite to the Code of Federal Regulations in a footnote. All references to Securities Exchange Act Releases must include the release number, release date, Federal Register cite, Federal Register date, and corresponding file number (e.g., SR [SRO] xx xx). A material failure to comply with these guidelines will result in the proposed rule change, security based swap submission, or advance notice being deemed not properly filed. See also Rule 0 3 under the Act (17 CFR 240.0 3)

Exhibit 2 - Notices, Written Comments, Transcripts, Other Communications

Add Remove View

Copies of notices, written comments, transcripts, other communications. If such documents cannot be filed electronically in accordance with Instruction F, they shall be filed in accordance with Instruction G.

Exhibit Sent As Paper Document

Exhibit 3 - Form, Report, or Questionnaire

Add Remove View

Copies of any form, report, or questionnaire that the self regulatory organization proposes to use to help implement or operate the proposed rule change, or that is referred to by the proposed rule change.

Exhibit Sent As Paper Document

Exhibit 4 - Marked Copies

Add Remove View

The full text shall be marked, in any convenient manner, to indicate additions to and deletions from the immediately preceding filing. The purpose of Exhibit 4 is to permit the staff to identify immediately the changes made from the text of the rule with which it has been working.

Exhibit 5 - Proposed Rule Text

Add Remove View

The self regulatory organization may choose to attach as Exhibit 5 proposed changes to rule text in place of providing it in Item I and which may otherwise be more easily readable if provided separately from Form 19b 4. Exhibit 5 shall be considered part of the proposed rule change.

Partial Amendment

Add Remove View

If the self regulatory organization is amending only part of the text of a lengthy proposed rule change, it may, with the Commission's permission, file only those portions of the text of the proposed rule change in which changes are being made if the filing (i.e. partial amendment) is clearly understandable on its face. Such partial amendment shall be clearly identified and marked to show deletions and additions.

1. Text of the Proposed Rule Change

(a) The proposed rule change of The Depository Trust Company (“DTC”) proposes to (1) adopt the Recovery & Wind-down Plan of DTC (“R&W Plan” or “Plan”), attached hereto as Exhibit 5a; and (2) amend the Rules, By-Laws and Organization Certificate of DTC (“Rules”)¹ in order to adopt Rule 32(A) (Wind-down of the Corporation) and Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure) (each proposed Rule 32(A) and proposed Rule 38, a “Proposed Rule” and, collectively, the “Proposed Rules”), attached hereto as Exhibit 5b.

The R&W Plan would be maintained by DTC in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (“Act”), by providing plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of DTC necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses, as described below.² The Proposed Rules are designed to (1) facilitate the implementation of the R&W Plan when necessary and, in particular, allow DTC to effectuate its strategy for winding down and transferring its business; (2) provide Participants with transparency around critical provisions of the R&W Plan that relate to their rights, responsibilities and obligations; and (3) provide DTC with the legal basis to implement those provisions of the R&W Plan when necessary, as described below.

(b) Not applicable.

(c) Not applicable.

2. Procedures of the Self-Regulatory Organization

The proposal was approved by the Board of Directors of DTC (“Board”) at a meeting duly called and held on October 18, 2017.

3. Self-Regulatory Organization’s Statement of the Purpose of, and Statutory Basis for, the Proposed Rule Change

(a) Purpose

Description of Amendment No. 1

This filing constitutes Amendment No. 1 (“Amendment”) to the proposed rule change SR-DTC-2017-021 (“Original Filing”) previously filed by DTC.³ DTC is amending the proposed R&W Plan and the Original Filing in order to clarify certain matters and make minor

¹ Capitalized terms used herein and not otherwise defined herein are defined in the Rules, available at www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/rules/DTC_rules.pdf.

² 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

³ See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 82579 (January 24, 2018), 83 FR 4310 (January 30, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-803).

technical and conforming changes to the R&W Plan, as described below and as marked on Exhibit 4 hereto. To the extent such changes to the Plan require changes to the Original Filing, the information provided under “*Description of Proposed Changes*” in the Original Filing has been amended and is restated in its entirety below. Other sections of the Original Filing are unchanged and are restated in their entirety for convenience.

First, this Amendment would clarify the use in the Plan of the term “Participant Default Losses.” This Amendment would also clarify the actions and tools available in the third phase of the Crisis Continuum, which is referred to as the “Participant Default phase.” This Amendment would also make conforming changes as necessary to reflect the use of these terms.

Second, this Amendment would clarify that actions and tools described in the Plan that are available in one phase of the Crisis Continuum may be used in subsequent phases of the Crisis Continuum, when appropriate to address the applicable situation. This Amendment would also clarify that allocation of losses resulting from a Participant Default would be applied when provide for in, and in accordance with, Rule 4.

Third, this Amendment would clarify that the Recovery Corridor (as defined therein) is not a “sub-phase” of the recovery phase. Rather, the Recovery Corridor is a period of time that would occur toward the end of the Participant Default phase, when indicators are that DTC may transition into the recovery phase. Thus, the Recovery Corridor precedes the recovery phase.

Fourth, this Amendment would make revisions to address the allocation of losses resulting from a Participant Default in order to more closely conform such statements to the changes proposed by the Loss Allocation Filing, as defined below.

Fifth, this Amendment would clarify the notifications that DTC would be required to make under the Proposed Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure).

Finally, this Amendment would make minor, technical and conforming revisions to correct typographical errors and to simplify descriptions. For example, such revisions would use lower case for terms that are not defined therein, and would use upper case for terms that are defined. The Amendment would also simplify certain descriptions by removing extraneous words and statements that are repetitive. These minor, technical revisions would not alter the substance of the proposal.

Description of Proposed Changes

DTC is proposing to adopt the R&W Plan to be used by the Board and management in the event DTC encounters scenarios that could potentially prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. The R&W Plan would identify (i) the recovery tools available to DTC to address the risks of (a) uncovered losses or liquidity shortfalls resulting from the default of one or more of its Participants, and (b) losses arising from non-default events, such as damage to its physical assets, a cyber-attack, or custody and investment losses, and (ii) the strategy for implementation of such tools. The R&W Plan would also establish the strategy and framework for the orderly wind-down of DTC and the transfer of its business in the remote event

the implementation of the available recovery tools does not successfully return DTC to financial viability.

As discussed in greater detail below, the R&W Plan would provide, among other matters, (i) an overview of the business of DTC and its parent, The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation (“DTCC”); (ii) an analysis of DTC’s intercompany arrangements and critical links to other financial market infrastructures (“FMIs”); (iii) a description of DTC’s services, and the criteria used to determine which services are considered critical; (iv) a description of the DTC and DTCC governance structure; (v) a description of the governance around the overall recovery and wind-down program; (vi) a discussion of tools available to DTC to mitigate credit/market and liquidity risks, including recovery indicators and triggers, and the governance around management of a stress event along a “Crisis Continuum” timeline; (vii) a discussion of potential non-default losses and the resources available to DTC to address such losses, including recovery triggers and tools to mitigate such losses; (viii) an analysis of the recovery tools’ characteristics, including how they are comprehensive, effective, and transparent, how the tools provide appropriate incentives to Participants to, among other things, control and monitor the risks they may present to DTC, and how DTC seeks to minimize the negative consequences of executing its recovery tools; and (ix) the framework and approach for the orderly wind-down and transfer of DTC’s business, including an estimate of the time and costs to effect a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC.

The R&W Plan would be structured as a roadmap, and would identify and describe the tools that DTC may use to effect a recovery from the events and scenarios described therein. Certain recovery tools that would be identified in the R&W Plan are based in the Rules (including the Proposed Rules) and, as such, descriptions of those tools would include descriptions of, and reference to, the applicable Rules and any related internal policies and procedures. Other recovery tools that would be identified in the R&W Plan are based in contractual arrangements to which DTC is a party, including, for example, existing committed or pre-arranged liquidity arrangements. Further, the R&W Plan would state that DTC may develop further supporting internal guidelines and materials that may provide operationally for matters described in the Plan, and that such documents would be supplemental and subordinate to the Plan.

Key factors considered in developing the R&W Plan and the types of tools available to DTC were its governance structure and the nature of the markets within which DTC operates. As a result of these considerations, many of the tools available to DTC that would be described in the R&W Plan are DTC’s existing, business-as-usual risk management and default management tools, which would continue to be applied in scenarios of increasing stress. In addition to these existing, business-as-usual tools, the R&W Plan would describe DTC’s other principal recovery tools, which include, for example, (i) identifying, monitoring and managing general business risk and holding sufficient liquid net assets funded by equity (“LNA”) to cover potential general business losses pursuant to the Clearing Agency Policy on Capital Requirements (“Capital Policy”),⁴ (ii) maintaining the Clearing Agency Capital Replenishment

⁴ See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 81105 (July 7, 2017), 82 FR 32399 (July 13, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-003; SR-FICC-2017-007; SR-NSCC-2017-004).

Plan (“Replenishment Plan”) as a viable plan for the replenishment of capital should DTC’s equity fall close to or below the amount being held pursuant to the Capital Policy,⁵ and (iii) the process for the allocation of losses among Participants as provided in Rule 4.⁶ The R&W Plan would provide governance around the selection and implementation of the recovery tool or tools most relevant to mitigate a stress scenario and any applicable loss or liquidity shortfall.

The development of the R&W Plan is facilitated by the Office of Recovery & Resolution Planning (“R&R Team”) of DTCC.⁷ The R&R Team reports to the DTCC Management Committee (“Management Committee”) and is responsible for maintaining the R&W Plan and for the development and ongoing maintenance of the overall recovery and wind-down planning process. The Board, or such committees as may be delegated authority by the Board from time to time pursuant to its charter, would review and approve the R&W Plan biennially, and would also review and approve any changes that are proposed to the R&W Plan outside of the biennial review.

As discussed in greater detail below, the Proposed Rules would define the procedures that may be employed in the event of a DTC wind-down, and would provide for DTC’s authority to take certain actions on the occurrence of a “Market Disruption Event,” as defined therein. Significantly, the Proposed Rules would provide Participants with transparency and certainty with respect to these matters. The Proposed Rules would facilitate the implementation of the R&W Plan, particularly DTC’s strategy for winding down and transferring its business, and would provide DTC with the legal basis to implement those aspects of the R&W Plan.

⁵ See id.

⁶ See Rule 4 (Participants Fund and Participants Investment), supra note 1. DTC is proposing changes to Rule 4 regarding allocation of losses in a separate filing submitted simultaneously with the Original Filing. See Securities Exchange Act Release Nos. 82432 (January 2, 2018), 83 FR 884 (January 8, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-021) and 82579 (January 24, 2018), 83 FR 4310 (January 30, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-803) (collectively referred to herein as the “Loss Allocation Filing”). DTC has submitted an amendment to the Loss Allocation Filing. A copy of the amendment to the Loss Allocation Filing is available at <http://www.dtcc.com/legal/sec-rule-filings.aspx>. DTC expects the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (“Commission”) to review both proposals, as amended, together, and, as such, the proposal described in this filing anticipates the approval and implementation of those proposed changes to the Rules.

⁷ DTCC operates on a shared services model with respect to DTC and its other subsidiaries. Most corporate functions are established and managed on an enterprise-wide basis pursuant to intercompany agreements under which it is generally DTCC that provides a relevant service to a subsidiary, including DTC.

DTC R&W Plan

The R&W Plan is intended to be used by the Board and DTC's management in the event DTC encounters scenarios that could potentially prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. The R&W Plan would be structured to provide a roadmap, define the strategy, and identify the tools available to DTC to either (i) recover, in the event it experiences losses that exceed its prefunded resources (such strategies and tools referred to herein as the "Recovery Plan") or (ii) wind-down its business in a manner designed to permit the continuation of its critical services in the event that such recovery efforts are not successful (such strategies and tools referred to herein as the "Wind-down Plan"). The description of the R&W Plan below is intended to highlight the purpose and expected effects of the material aspects of the R&W Plan, and to provide Participants with appropriate transparency into these features.

Business Overview, Critical Services, and Governance

The introduction to the R&W Plan would identify the document's purpose and its regulatory background, and would outline a summary of the Plan. The stated purpose of the R&W Plan is that it is to be used by the Board and DTC management in the event DTC encounters scenarios that could potentially prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. The R&W Plan would be maintained by DTC in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act⁸ by providing plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of DTC.

The R&W Plan would describe DTCC's business profile, provide a summary of DTC's services, and identify the intercompany arrangements and critical links between DTC and other FMIs. This overview section would provide a context for the R&W Plan by describing DTC's business, organizational structure and critical links to other entities. By providing this context, this section would facilitate the analysis of the potential impact of utilizing the recovery tools set forth in later sections of the Recovery Plan, and the analysis of the factors that would be addressed in implementing the Wind-down Plan.

DTCC is a user-owned and user-governed holding company and is the parent company of DTC and its affiliates, National Securities Clearing Corporation ("NSCC") and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation ("FICC," and, together with NSCC and DTC, the "Clearing Agencies"). The Plan would describe how corporate support services are provided to DTC from DTCC and DTCC's other subsidiaries through intercompany agreements under a shared services model.

The Plan would provide a description of established links between DTC and other FMIs, both domestic and foreign, including central securities depositories ("CSDs") and central counterparties ("CCPs"), as well as the twelve U.S. Federal Reserve Banks. In general, these links are either "inbound" or "issuer" links, in which the other FMI is a Participant and/or a Pledgee and maintains one or more accounts at DTC, or "outbound" or "investor" links in which DTC maintains one or more accounts at another FMI. Key FMIs with which DTC maintains

⁸ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

critical links include CDS Clearing and Depository Services Inc. (“CDS”), the Canadian CSD, with participant links in both directions; Euroclear Bank SA/NV (“EB”) for cross-border collateral management services; and The Options Clearing Corporation (“OCC”) and the Federal Reserve Bank of New York (“FRBNY”), each of which is both a Participant and a Pledgee. The critical link for the U.S. marketplace is the relationship between DTC and NSCC, through which continuous net settlement (“CNS”) transactions are completed by settlement at DTC, and DTC acts as settlement agent for NSCC for end-of-day funds settlement.⁹ This section of the Plan, identifying and briefly describing DTC’s established links, would provide a mapping of critical connections and dependencies that may need to be relied on or otherwise addressed in connection with the implementation of either the Recovery Plan or the Wind-down Plan.

The Plan would define the criteria for classifying certain of DTC’s services as “critical,” and would identify those critical services and the rationale for their classification. This section would provide an analysis of the potential systemic impact from a service disruption, and is important for evaluating how the recovery tools and the wind-down strategy would facilitate and provide for the continuation of DTC’s critical services to the markets it serves. The criteria that would be used to identify a DTC service or function as critical would include consideration as to (1) whether there is a lack of alternative providers or products; (2) whether failure of the service could impact DTC’s ability to perform its book-entry and settlement services; (3) whether failure of the service could impact DTC’s ability to perform its payment system functions; and (4) whether the service is interconnected with other participants and processes within the U.S. financial system, for example, with other FMIs, settlement banks and broker-dealers. The Plan would then list each of those services, functions or activities that DTC has identified as “critical” based on the applicability of these four criteria. Such critical services would include, for example, MMIs and Commercial Paper Processing,¹⁰ Mandatory and Voluntary Corporate Actions,¹¹ Cash and Stock Distributions,¹² and End of Day Net Money Settlement.¹³ The R&W Plan would also include a non-exhaustive list of DTC services that are not deemed critical.

The evaluation of which services provided by DTC are deemed critical is important for purposes of determining how the R&W Plan would facilitate the continuity of those services. As

⁹ DTC has other links in addition to those mentioned above. The current list of linked CSDs is available on the DTCC website.

¹⁰ See Rule 9(C) (Transactions in MMI Securities), supra note 1.

¹¹ See DTC Reorganizations Service Guide, available at www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/service-guides/Reorganizations.pdf.

¹² See DTC Distributions Service Guide, available at <http://www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/service-guides/Service%20Guide%20Distributions.pdf>.

¹³ See DTC Settlement Service Guide, available at www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/service-guides/Settlement.pdf.

discussed further below, while DTC's Wind-down Plan would provide for the transfer of all critical services to a transferee in the event DTC's wind-down is implemented, it would anticipate that any non-critical services that are ancillary and beneficial to a critical service, or that otherwise have substantial user demand from the continuing membership, would also be transferred.

The Plan would describe the governance structure of both DTCC and DTC. This section of the Plan would identify the ownership and governance model of these entities at both the Board of Directors and management levels. The Plan would state that the stages of escalation required to manage recovery under the Recovery Plan or to invoke DTC's wind-down under the Wind-down Plan would range from relevant business line managers up to the Board through DTC's governance structure. The Plan would then identify the parties responsible for certain activities under both the Recovery Plan and the Wind-down Plan, and would describe their respective roles. The Plan would identify the Risk Committee of the Board ("Board Risk Committee") as being responsible for oversight of risk management activities at DTC, which include focusing on both oversight of risk management systems and processes designed to identify and manage various risks faced by DTC, and, due to DTC's critical role in the markets in which it operates, oversight of DTC's efforts to mitigate systemic risks that could impact those markets and the broader financial system.¹⁴ The Plan would identify the DTCC Management Risk Committee ("Management Risk Committee") as primarily responsible for general, day-to-day risk management through delegated authority from the Board Risk Committee. The Plan would state that the Management Risk Committee has delegated specific day-to-day risk management, including management of risks addressed through margining systems and related activities, to the DTCC Group Chief Risk Office ("GCRO"), which works with staff within the DTCC Financial Risk Management group. Finally, the Plan would describe the role of the Management Committee, which provides overall direction for all aspects of DTC's business, technology, and operations and the functional areas that support these activities.

The Plan would describe the governance of recovery efforts in response to both default losses and non-default losses under the Recovery Plan, identifying the groups responsible for those recovery efforts. Specifically, the Plan would state that the Management Risk Committee provides oversight of actions relating to the default of a Participant, which would be reported and escalated to it through the GCRO, and the Management Committee provides oversight of actions relating to non-default events that could result in a loss, which would be reported and escalated to it from the DTCC Chief Financial Officer ("CFO") and the DTCC Treasury group that reports to the CFO, and from other relevant subject matter experts based on the nature and circumstances of the non-default event.¹⁵ More generally, the Plan would state that the type of loss and the

¹⁴ The charter of the Board Risk Committee is available at <http://www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/policy-and-compliance/DTCC-BOD-Risk-Committee-Charter.pdf>.

¹⁵ The Plan would state that these groups would be involved to address how to mitigate the financial impact of non-default losses, and in recommending mitigating actions, the Management Committee would consider information and recommendations from relevant subject matter experts based on the nature and circumstances of the non-default event.

nature and circumstances of the events that lead to the loss would dictate the components of governance to address that loss, including the escalation path to authorize those actions. As described further below, both the Recovery Plan and the Wind-down Plan would describe the governance of escalations, decisions, and actions under each of those plans.

Finally, the Plan would describe the role of the R&R Team in managing the overall recovery and wind-down program and plans for each of the Clearing Agencies.

DTC Recovery Plan

The Recovery Plan is intended to be a roadmap of those actions that DTC may employ to monitor and, as needed, stabilize its financial condition. As each event that could lead to a financial loss could be unique in its circumstances, the Recovery Plan would not be prescriptive and would permit DTC to maintain flexibility in its use of identified tools and in the sequence in which such tools are used, subject to any conditions in the Rules or the contractual arrangement on which such tool is based. DTC's Recovery Plan would consist of (1) a description of the risk management surveillance, tools, and governance that DTC would employ across evolving stress scenarios that it may face as it transitions through a "Crisis Continuum," described below; (2) a description of DTC's risk of losses that may result from non-default events, and the financial resources and recovery tools available to DTC to manage those risks and any resulting losses; and (3) an evaluation of the characteristics of the recovery tools that may be used in response to either losses arising out of a Participant Default (as defined below) or non-default losses, as described in greater detail below. In all cases, DTC would act in accordance with the Rules, within the governance structure described in the R&W Plan, and in accordance with applicable regulatory oversight to address each situation in order to best protect DTC, its Participants and the markets in which it operates.

Managing Participant Default Losses and Liquidity Needs Through the Crisis Continuum. The Plan would describe the risk management surveillance, tools, and governance that DTC may employ across an increasing stress environment, which is referred to as the "Crisis Continuum." This description would identify those tools that can be employed to mitigate losses, and mitigate or minimize liquidity needs, as the market environment becomes increasingly stressed. The phases of the Crisis Continuum would include (1) a stable market phase, (2) a stressed market phase, (3) a phase commencing with DTC's decision to cease to act for a Participant or Affiliated Family of Participants (referred to in the Plan as the "Participant Default phase"),¹⁶ and (4) a recovery phase. This section of the Recovery Plan would address conditions and circumstances relating to DTC's decision to cease to act for a Participant pursuant

Any necessary operational response to these events, however, would be managed in accordance with applicable incident response/business continuity process; for example, processes established by the DTCC Technology Risk Management group would be followed in response to a cyber event.

¹⁶ The Plan defines an "Affiliated Family" of Participants as a number of affiliated entities that are all Participants of DTC.

to the Rules.¹⁷ For ease of reference, the R&W Plan would, for purposes of the Plan, use the term “Participant Default Losses” to refer to losses that arise out of or relate to the Participant Default and resulting cease to act (including any losses that arise from liquidation of the Participant’s Collateral).

The Recovery Plan would provide context to its roadmap through this Crisis Continuum by describing DTC’s ongoing management of credit, market risk and liquidity risk, and its existing process for measuring and reporting its risks as they align with established thresholds for its tolerance of those risks. The Recovery Plan would discuss the management of credit/market risk and liquidity exposures together, because the tools that address these risks can be deployed either separately or in a coordinated approach in order to address both exposures. DTC manages these risk exposures collectively to limit their overall impact on DTC and its Participants. DTC has built-in mechanisms to limit exposures and replenish financial resources used in a stress event, in order to continue to operate in a safe and sound manner. DTC is a closed, collateralized system in which liquidity resources are matched against risk management controls, so, at any time, the potential net settlement obligation of the Participant or Affiliated Family of Participants with the largest net settlement obligation cannot exceed the amount of liquidity resources.¹⁸ While Collateral securities are subject to market price risk, DTC manages its liquidity and market risks through the calculation of the required deposits to the Participants Fund¹⁹ and risk management controls, i.e., collateral haircuts, the Collateral Monitor²⁰ and Net Debit Cap.²¹

¹⁷ In the Plan, “cease to act” and the actions that may lead to such decision, are used within the context of the Rules, including Rule 4 (Participants Fund and Participants Investment), Rule 9(A) (Transactions in Securities and Money Payments), Rule 9(B) (Transactions in Eligible Securities), Rule 9(C) (Transactions in MMI Securities), Rule 10 (Discretionary Termination), Rule 11 (Mandatory Termination) and Rule 12 (Insolvency), supra note 1. Further, the term “Participant Default” would also be used in the Plan as such term is defined in Rule 4, as proposed to be amended by the Loss Allocation filing, supra note 6.

¹⁸ DTC’s liquidity risk management strategy, including the manner in which DTC would deploy liquidity tools as well as its intraday use of liquidity, is described in the Clearing Agency Liquidity Risk Management Framework. See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 80489 (April 19, 2017), 82 FR 19120 (April 25, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-004, SR-DTC-2017-005, SR-FICC-2017-008).

¹⁹ See Rule 4 (Participants Fund and Participants Investment), supra note 1.

²⁰ See Rule 1, Section 1, supra note 1. For DTC, credit risk and market risk are closely related, as DTC monitors credit exposures from Participants through these risk management controls, which limit Participant settlement obligations to the amount of available liquidity resources and require those obligations to be fully collateralized. The pledge or liquidation of collateral in an amount sufficient to restore liquidity resources depends on market values and demand, *i.e.*, market risk exposure. Such risk management controls are part of DTC’s market risk management strategy and are designed to comply

The Recovery Plan would outline the metrics and indicators that DTC has developed to evaluate a stress situation against established risk tolerance thresholds. Each risk mitigation tool identified in the Recovery Plan would include a description of the escalation thresholds that allow for effective and timely reporting to the appropriate internal management staff and committees, or to the Board. The Recovery Plan would make clear that these tools and escalation protocols would be calibrated across each phase of the Crisis Continuum. The Recovery Plan would also establish that DTC would retain the flexibility to deploy such tools either separately or in a coordinated approach, and to use other alternatives to these actions and tools as necessitated by the circumstances of a particular Participant Default event, in accordance with the Rules. Therefore, the Recovery Plan would both provide DTC with a roadmap to follow within each phase of the Crisis Continuum, and would permit it to adjust its risk management measures to address the unique circumstances of each event.

The Recovery Plan would describe the conditions that mark each phase of the Crisis Continuum, and would identify actions that DTC could take as it transitions through each phase in order to both prevent losses from materializing through active risk management, and to restore the financial health of DTC during a period of stress.

The stable market phase of the Crisis Continuum would describe active risk management activities in the normal course of business. These activities would include performing (1) backtests to evaluate the adequacy of the collateral level and the haircut sufficiency for covering market price volatility and (2) stress testing to cover market price moves under real historical and hypothetical scenarios to assess the haircut adequacy under extreme but plausible market conditions. The backtesting and stress testing results are escalated, as necessary, to internal and Board committees.²²

The Recovery Plan would describe some of the indicators of the stress market phase of the Crisis Continuum, which would include, for example, volatility in market prices of certain assets where there is increased uncertainty among market participants about the fundamental value of those assets. This phase would involve general market stresses, when no Participant Default would be imminent. Within the description of this phase, the Recovery Plan would provide that DTC may take targeted, routine risk management measures as necessary and as permitted by the Rules.

with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(4) under the Act, where these risks are referred to as “credit risks.”
See also 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(4).

²¹ Id.

²² DTC’s stress testing practices are described in the Clearing Agency Stress Testing Framework (Market Risk). See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 80485 (April 19, 2017), 82 FR 19131 (April 25, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-005, SR-FICC-2017-009, SR-NSCC-2017-006).

Within the Participant Default phase of the Crisis Continuum, the Recovery Plan would provide a roadmap for the existing procedures that DTC would follow in the event of a Participant Default and any decision by DTC to cease to act for that Participant.²³ The Recovery Plan would provide that the objectives of DTC's actions upon a Participant Default are to (1) minimize losses and market exposure, and (2), to the extent practicable, minimize disturbances to the affected markets. The Recovery Plan would describe tools, actions, and related governance for both market risk monitoring and liquidity risk monitoring through this phase. For example, in connection with managing its market risk during this phase, DTC would, pursuant to its Rules and existing procedures, (1) monitor and assess the adequacy of its Participants Fund and Net Debit Caps; and (2) follow its operational procedures relating to the execution of a liquidation of the Defaulting Participant's Collateral securities through close collaboration and coordination across multiple functions. Management of liquidity risk through this phase would involve ongoing monitoring of, among other things, the adequacy of the Participants Fund and risk controls, and the Recovery Plan would identify certain actions DTC may deploy as it deems necessary to mitigate a potential liquidity shortfall, which would include, for example, the reduction of Net Debit Caps of some or all Participants, or seeking additional liquidity resources. The Recovery Plan would state that, throughout this phase, relevant information would be escalated and reported to both internal management committees and the Board Risk Committee.

The Recovery Plan would also identify financial resources available to DTC, pursuant to the Rules, to address losses arising out of a Participant Default. Specifically, Rule 4, as proposed to be amended by the Loss Allocation Filing, would provide that losses remaining after application of the Defaulting Participant's resources be satisfied first by applying a "Corporate Contribution," and then, if necessary, by allocating remaining losses among the membership in accordance with such Rule 4, as amended.²⁴

In order to provide for an effective and timely recovery, the Recovery Plan would describe the period of time that would occur near the end of the Participant Default phase, during which DTC may experience stress events or observe early warning indicators that allow it to evaluate its options and prepare for the recovery phase (referred to in the Plan as the "Recovery Corridor"). The Recovery Plan would then describe the recovery phase of the Crisis Continuum, which would begin on the date that DTC issues the first Loss Allocation Notice of the second

²³ See Rule 10 (Discretionary Termination); Rule 11 (Mandatory Termination); Rule 12 (Insolvency), supra note 1.

²⁴ See supra note 6. The Loss Allocation Filing proposes to amend Rule 4 to define the amount DTC would contribute to address a loss resulting from either a Participant Default or a non-default event as the "Corporate Contribution." This amount would be 50 percent (50%) of the "General Business Risk Capital Requirement," which is calculated pursuant to the Capital Policy and is an amount sufficient to cover potential general business losses so that DTC can continue operations and services as a going concern if those losses materialize, in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15) under the Act. See also supra note 4; 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(15).

loss allocation round with respect to a given “Event Period.”²⁵ The recovery phase would describe actions that DTC may take to avoid entering into a wind-down of its business.

DTC expects that significant deterioration of liquidity resources would cause it to enter the Recovery Corridor. As such, the Plan would describe the actions DTC may take aimed at replenishing those resources. Recovery Corridor indicators may include, for example, a rapid and material increase in market prices or sequential or simultaneous failures of multiple Participants or Affiliated Families of Participants over a compressed time period. Throughout the Recovery Corridor, DTC would monitor the adequacy of its resources and the expected timing of replenishment of those resources, and would do so through the monitoring of certain corridor indicator metrics.

The majority of the corridor indicators, as identified in the Recovery Plan, relate directly to conditions that may require DTC to adjust its strategy for hedging and liquidating Collateral securities, and any such changes would include an assessment of the status of the corridor indicators. Corridor indicators would include, for example, effectiveness and speed of DTC’s efforts to liquidate Collateral securities, and an impediment to the availability of its resources to repay any borrowings due to any Participant default. For each corridor indicator, the Recovery Plan would identify (1) measures of the indicator, (2) evaluations of the status of the indicator, (3) metrics for determining the status of the deterioration or improvement of the indicator, and (4) “Corridor Actions,” which are steps that may be taken to improve the status of the indicator,²⁶ as well as management escalations required to authorize those steps. Because DTC has never experienced the default of multiple Participants, it has not, historically, measured the deterioration or improvements metrics of the corridor indicators. As such, these metrics were chosen based on the business judgment of DTC management.

²⁵ The Loss Allocation Filing proposes to amend Rule 4 to introduce the concept of an “Event Period” as the ten (10) Business Days beginning on (i) with respect to a Participant Default, the day on which DTC notifies Participants that it has ceased to act for a Participant, or (ii) with respect to a non-default loss, the day that DTC notifies Participants of the determination by the Board of Directors that there is a non-default loss event, as described in greater detail in that filing. The proposed Rule 4 would define a “round” as a series of loss allocations relating to an Event Period, and would provide that the first Loss Allocation Notice in a first, second, or subsequent round shall expressly state that such notice reflects the beginning of a first, second, or subsequent round. The maximum allocable loss amount of a round is equal to the sum of the “Loss Allocation Caps” (as defined in the proposed Rule 4) of those Participants included in the round. See supra note 6.

²⁶ The Corridor Actions that would be identified in the Plan are indicative, but not prescriptive; therefore, if DTC needs to consider alternative actions due to the applicable facts and circumstances, the escalation of those alternative actions would follow the same escalation protocol identified in the Plan for the Corridor Indicator to which the action relates.

The Recovery Plan would also describe the reporting and escalation of the status of the corridor indicators throughout the Recovery Corridor. Significant deterioration of a corridor indicator, as measured by the metrics set out in the Recovery Plan, would be escalated to the Board. DTC management would review the corridor indicators and the related metrics at least annually, and would modify these metrics as necessary in light of observations from simulations of Participant Defaults and other analyses. Any proposed modifications would be reviewed by the Management Risk Committee and the Board Risk Committee. The Recovery Plan would estimate that DTC may remain in the Recovery Corridor stage between one day and two weeks. This estimate is based on historical data observed in past Participant Default events, the results of simulations of Participant Defaults, and periodic liquidity analyses conducted by DTC. The actual length of a Recovery Corridor would vary based on actual market conditions observed at the time, and DTC would expect the Recovery Corridor to be shorter in market conditions of increased stress.

The Recovery Plan would outline steps by which DTC may allocate its losses, which would occur when and in the order provided in Rule 4, as amended.²⁷ The Recovery Plan would also identify tools that may be used to address foreseeable shortfalls of DTC's liquidity resources following a Participant Default, and would provide that these tools may be used as appropriate during the Crisis Continuum to address liquidity shortfalls if they arise. The goal in managing DTC's liquidity resources is to maximize resource availability in an evolving stress situation, to maintain flexibility in the order and use of sources of liquidity, and to repay any third party lenders in a timely manner. Liquidity tools include, for example, DTC's committed 364-day credit facility²⁸ and Net Credit Reductions.²⁹ The Recovery Plan would state that the availability and capacity of these liquidity tools cannot be accurately predicted and are dependent on the circumstances of the applicable stress period, including market price volatility, actual or perceived disruptions in financial markets, the costs to DTC of utilizing these tools, and any potential impact on DTC's credit rating.

As stated above, the Recovery Plan would state that DTC will have entered the recovery phase on the date that it issues the first Loss Allocation Notice of the second loss allocation round with respect to a given Event Period. The Recovery Plan would provide that, during the

²⁷ As these matters are described in greater detail in the Loss Allocation Filing and in the proposed amendments to Rule 4, described therein, reference is made to that filing and the details are not repeated here. See supra note 6.

²⁸ See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 80605 (May 5, 2017), 82 FR 21850 (May 10, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-802; SR-NSCC-2017-802).

²⁹ DTC may borrow amounts needed to complete settlement from Participants by net credit reductions to their settlement accounts, secured by the Collateral of the defaulting Participant. See Securities Exchange Act Release Nos. 24689 (July 9, 1987), 52 FR 26613 (July 15, 1987) (SR-DTC-87-4); 41879 (September 15, 1999), 64 FR 51360 (September 22, 1999) (SR-DTC-99-15); 42281 (December 28, 1999), 65 FR 1420 (January 10, 2000) (SR-DTC-99-25).

recovery phase, DTC would continue and, as needed, enhance, the monitoring and remedial actions already described in connection with previous phases of the Crisis Continuum, and would remain in the recovery phase until its financial resources are expected to be or are fully replenished, or until the Wind-down Plan is triggered, as described below.

The Recovery Plan would describe governance for the actions and tools that may be employed within each phase of the Crisis Continuum, which would be dictated by the facts and circumstances applicable to the situation being addressed. Such facts and circumstances would be measured by the various indicators and metrics applicable to that phase of the Crisis Continuum, and would follow relevant escalation protocol that would be described in the Recovery Plan. The Recovery Plan would also describe the governance procedures around a decision to cease to act for a Participant, pursuant to the Rules, and around the management and oversight of the subsequent liquidation of Collateral securities. The Recovery Plan would state that, overall, DTC would retain flexibility in accordance with the Rules, its governance structure, and its regulatory oversight, to address a particular situation in order to best protect DTC and its Participants, and to meet the primary objectives, throughout the Crisis Continuum, of minimizing losses and, where consistent and practicable, minimizing disturbance to affected markets.

Non-Default Losses. The Recovery Plan would outline how DTC may address losses that result from events other than a Participant Default. While these matters are addressed in greater detail in other documents, this section of the Plan would provide a roadmap to those documents and an outline for DTC's approach to monitoring and managing losses that could result from a non-default event. The Plan would first identify some of the risks DTC faces that could lead to these losses, which include, for example, the business and profit/loss risks of unexpected declines in revenue or growth of expenses; the operational risks of disruptions to systems or processes that could lead to large losses, including those resulting from, for example, a cyber-attack; and custody or investment risks that could lead to financial losses. The Recovery Plan would describe DTC's overall strategy for the management of these risks, which includes a "three lines of defense" approach to risk management that allows for comprehensive management of risk across the organization.³⁰ The Recovery Plan would also describe DTC's

³⁰ This "three lines of defense" approach to risk management includes (1) a first line of defense comprised of the various business lines and functional units that support the products and services offered by DTC; (2) a second line of defense comprised of control functions that support DTC, including the risk management, legal and compliance areas; and (3) a third line of defense, which is performed by an internal audit group. The Clearing Agency Risk Management Framework includes a description of this "three lines of defense" approach to risk management, and addresses how DTC comprehensively manages various risks, including operational, general business, investment, custody, and other risks that arise in or are borne by it. See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 81635 (September 15, 2017), 82 FR 44224 (September 21, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-013; SR-FICC-2017-016; SR-NSCC-2017-012). The Clearing Agency Operational Risk Management Framework describes the manner in which DTC manages operational risks, as defined therein. See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 81745 (September 28, 2017), 82 FR 46332 (October 4, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-014; SR-FICC-2017-017; SR-NSCC-2017-013).

approach to financial risk and capital management. The Plan would identify key aspects of this approach, including, for example, an annual budget process, business line performance reviews with management, and regular review of capital requirements against LNA. These risk management strategies are collectively intended to allow DTC to effectively identify, monitor, and manage risks of non-default losses.

The Plan would identify the two categories of financial resources DTC maintains to cover losses and expenses arising from non-default risks or events as (1) LNA, maintained, monitored, and managed pursuant to the Capital Policy, which include (a) amounts held in satisfaction of the General Business Risk Capital Requirement,³¹ (b) the Corporate Contribution,³² and (c) other amounts held in excess of DTC's capital requirements pursuant to the Capital Policy; and (2) resources available pursuant to the loss allocation provisions of Rule 4.³³

The Plan would address the process by which the CFO and the DTCC Treasury group would determine which available LNA resources are most appropriate to cover a loss that is caused by a non-default event. This determination involves an evaluation of a number of factors, including the current and expected size of the loss, the expected time horizon over when the loss or additional expenses would materialize, the current and projected available LNA, and the likelihood LNA could be successfully replenished pursuant to the Replenishment Plan, if triggered.³⁴ Finally the Plan would discuss how DTC would apply its resources to address losses resulting from a non-default event, including the order of resources it would apply if the loss or liability is expected to exceed DTC's excess LNA amounts, or is large relative thereto, and the Board has declared the event a "Declared Non-Default Loss Event" pursuant to Rule 4.³⁵

The Plan would also describe proposed Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure), which DTC is proposing to adopt in its Rules. This Proposed Rule would provide transparency around how DTC would address extraordinary events that may occur outside its control. Specifically, the Proposed Rule would define a "Market Disruption Event" and the governance around a determination that such an event has occurred. The Proposed Rule would also describe DTC's authority to take actions during the pendency of a Market Disruption Event that it deems appropriate to address such an event and facilitate the continuation of its services, if practicable, as described in greater detail below.

The Plan would describe the interaction between the Proposed Rule and DTC's existing processes and procedures addressing business continuity management and disaster recovery (generally, the "BCM/DR procedures"), making clear that the Proposed Rule is designed to

³¹ See supra note 24.

³² See supra note 24.

³³ See supra note 6.

³⁴ See supra note 4.

³⁵ See supra note 6.

support those BCM/DR procedures and to address circumstances that may be exogenous to DTC and not necessarily addressed by the BCM/DR procedures. Finally, the Plan would describe that, because the operation of the Proposed Rule is specific to each applicable Market Disruption Event, the Proposed Rule does not define a time limit on its application. However, the Plan would note that actions authorized by the Proposed Rule would be limited to the pendency of the applicable Market Disruption Event, as made clear in the Proposed Rule. Overall, the Proposed Rule is designed to mitigate risks caused by Market Disruption Events and, thereby, minimize the risk of financial loss that may result from such events.

Recovery Tool Characteristics. The Recovery Plan would describe DTC's evaluation of the tools identified within the Recovery Plan, and its rationale for concluding that such tools are comprehensive, effective, and transparent, and that such tools provide appropriate incentives to Participants and minimize negative impact on Participants and the financial system, in compliance with guidance published by the Commission in connection with the adoption of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act.³⁶ DTC's analysis and the conclusions set forth in this section of the Recovery Plan are described in greater detail in Item 3(b) of this filing, below.

DTC Wind-down Plan

The Wind-down Plan would provide the framework and strategy for the orderly wind-down of DTC if the use of the recovery tools described in the Recovery Plan do not successfully return DTC to financial viability. While DTC believes that, given the comprehensive nature of the recovery tools, such event is extremely unlikely, as described in greater detail below, DTC is proposing a wind-down strategy that provides for (1) the transfer of DTC's business, assets, securities inventory, and membership to another legal entity, (2) such transfer being effected in connection with proceedings under Chapter 11 of the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code,³⁷ and (3) after effectuating this transfer, DTC liquidating any remaining assets in an orderly manner in bankruptcy proceedings. DTC believes that the proposed transfer approach to a wind-down would meet its objectives of (1) assuring that DTC's critical services will be available to the market as long as there are Participants in good standing, and (2) minimizing disruption to the operations of Participants and financial markets generally that might be caused by DTC's failure.

In describing the transfer approach to DTC's Wind-down Plan, the Plan would identify the factors that DTC considered in developing this approach, including the fact that DTC does not own material assets that are unrelated to its clearance and settlement activities. As such, a business reorganization or "bail-in" of debt approach would be unlikely to mitigate significant losses. Additionally, DTC's approach was developed in consideration of its critical and unique position in the U.S. markets, which precludes any approach that would cause DTC's critical services to no longer be available.

³⁶ Standards for Covered Clearing Agencies, Securities Exchange Act Release No. 78961 (September 28, 2016), 81 FR 70786 (October 13, 2016) (S7-03-14).

³⁷ 11 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.

First, the Wind-down Plan would describe the potential scenarios that could lead to the wind-down of DTC, and the likelihood of such scenarios. The Wind-down Plan would identify the time period leading up to a decision to wind-down DTC as the “Runway Period.” This period would follow the implementation of any recovery tools, as it may take a period of time, depending on the severity of the market stress at that time, for these tools to be effective or for DTC to realize a loss sufficient to cause it to be unable to borrow to complete settlement and to repay such borrowings.³⁸ The Plan would identify some of the indicators that DTC has entered this Runway Period, which would include, for example, simultaneous successive Participant Defaults, significant Participant retirements, and DTC’s inability to replenish financial resources following the liquidation of Collateral securities.

The trigger for implementing the Wind-down Plan would be a determination by the Board that recovery efforts have not been, or are unlikely to be, successful in returning DTC to viability as a going concern. As described in the Plan, DTC believes this is an appropriate trigger because it is both broad and flexible enough to cover a variety of scenarios, and would align incentives of DTC and Participants to avoid actions that might undermine DTC’s recovery efforts. Additionally, this approach takes into account the characteristics of DTC’s recovery tools and enables the Board to consider (1) the presence of indicators of a successful or unsuccessful recovery, and (2) potential for knock-on effects of continued iterative application of DTC’s recovery tools.

The Wind-down Plan would describe the general objectives of the transfer strategy, and would address assumptions regarding the transfer of DTC’s critical services, business, assets, securities inventory, and membership³⁹ to another legal entity that is legally, financially, and operationally able to provide DTC’s critical services to entities that wish to continue their membership following the transfer (“Transferee”). The Wind-down Plan would provide that the Transferee would be either (1) a third party legal entity, which may be an existing or newly established legal entity or a bridge entity formed to operate the business on an interim basis to enable the business to be transferred subsequently (“Third Party Transferee”); or (2) an existing, debt-free failover legal entity established ex-ante by DTCC (“Failover Transferee”) to be used as an alternative Transferee in the event that no viable or preferable Third Party Transferee timely commits to acquire DTC’s business. DTC would seek to identify the proposed Transferee, and negotiate and enter into transfer arrangements during the Runway Period and prior to making any

³⁸ The Wind-down Plan would state that, given DTC’s position as a user-governed financial market utility, it is possible that its Participants might voluntarily elect to provide additional support during the recovery phase leading up to a potential trigger of the Wind-down Plan, but would also make clear that DTC cannot predict the willingness of Participants to do so.

³⁹ Arrangements with FAST Agents and DRS Agents (each as defined in proposed Rule 32(A)) and with Settling Banks would also be assigned to the Transferee, so that the approach would be transparent to issuers and their transfer agents, as well as to Settling Banks.

filings under Chapter 11 of the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code.⁴⁰ As stated above, the Wind-down Plan would anticipate that the transfer to the Transferee, including the transfer and establishment of the Participant and Pledgee securities accounts on the books of the Transferee, be effected in connection with proceedings under Chapter 11 of the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code, and pursuant to a bankruptcy court order under Section 363 of the Bankruptcy Code, such that the transfer would be free and clear of claims against, and interests in, DTC, except to the extent expressly provided in the court's order.⁴¹

In order to effect a timely transfer of its services and minimize the market and operational disruption of such transfer, DTC would expect to transfer all of its critical services and any non-critical services that are ancillary and beneficial to a critical service, or that otherwise have substantial user demand from the continuing membership. Given the transfer of the securities inventory and the establishment on the books of the Transferee Participant and Pledgee securities accounts, DTC anticipates that, following the transfer, it would not itself continue to provide any services, critical or not. Following the transfer, the Wind-down Plan would anticipate that the Transferee and its continuing membership would determine whether to continue to provide any transferred non-critical service on an ongoing basis, or terminate the non-critical service following some transition period. DTC's Wind-down Plan would anticipate that the Transferee would enter into a transition services agreement with DTCC so that DTCC would continue to provide the shared services it currently provides to DTC, including staffing, infrastructure and operational support. The Wind-down Plan would also anticipate the assignment of DTC's "inbound" link arrangements to the Transferee. The Wind-down Plan would provide that in the case of "outbound" links, DTC would seek to have the linked FMIs agree, at a minimum, to accept the Transferee as a link party for a transition period.⁴²

The Wind-down Plan would provide that, following the effectiveness of the transfer to the Transferee, the wind-down of DTC would involve addressing any residual claims against DTC through the bankruptcy process and liquidating the legal entity. As such, and as stated above, the Wind-down Plan does not contemplate DTC continuing to provide services in any capacity following the transfer time, and any services not transferred would be terminated.

The Wind-down Plan would also identify the key dependencies for the effectiveness of the transfer, which include regulatory approvals that would permit the Transferee to be legally

⁴⁰ 11 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.

⁴¹ See id. at 363.

⁴² The proposed transfer arrangements outlined in the Wind-down Plan do not contemplate the transfer of any credit or funding agreements, which are generally not assignable by DTC. However, to the extent the Transferee adopts rules substantially identical to those DTC has in effect prior to the transfer, it would have the benefit of any rules-based liquidity funding. The Wind-down Plan contemplates that no Participants Fund would be transferred to the Transferee, as it is not held in a bankruptcy remote manner and it is the primary prefunded liquidity resource to be accessed in the recovery phase.

qualified to provide the transferred services from and after the transfer, and approval by the applicable bankruptcy court of, among other things, the proposed sale, assignments, and transfers to the Transferee.

The Wind-down Plan would address governance matters related to the execution of the transfer of DTC's business and its wind-down. The Wind-down Plan would address the duties of the Board to execute the wind-down of DTC in conformity with (1) the Rules, (2) the Board's fiduciary duties, which mandate that it exercise reasonable business judgment in performing these duties, and (3) DTC's regulatory obligations under the Act as a registered clearing agency. The Wind-down Plan would also identify certain factors the Board may consider in making these decisions, which would include, for example, whether DTC could safely stabilize the business and protect its value without seeking bankruptcy protection, and DTC's ability to continue to meet its regulatory requirements.

The Wind-down Plan would describe (1) actions DTC or DTCC may take to prepare for wind-down in the period before DTC experiences any financial distress, (2) actions DTC would take both during the recovery phase and the Runway Period to prepare for the execution of the Wind-down Plan, and (3) actions DTC would take upon commencement of bankruptcy proceedings to effectuate the Wind-down Plan.

Finally, the Wind-down Plan would include an analysis of the estimated time and costs to effectuate the plan, and would provide that this estimate be reviewed and approved by the Board annually. In order to estimate the length of time it might take to achieve a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC's critical operations, as contemplated by the R&W Plan, the Wind-down Plan would include an analysis of the possible sequencing and length of time it might take to complete an orderly wind-down and transfer of critical operations, as described in earlier sections of the R&W Plan. The Wind-down Plan would also include in this analysis consideration of other factors, including the time it might take to complete any further attempts at recovery under the Recovery Plan. The Wind-down Plan would then multiply this estimated length of time by DTC's average monthly operating expenses, including adjustments to account for changes to DTC's profit and expense profile during these circumstances, over the previous twelve months to determine the amount of LNA that it should hold to achieve a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC's critical operations. The estimated wind-down costs would constitute the "Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement" under the Capital Policy.⁴³ Under that policy, the General Business Risk Capital Requirement is calculated as the greatest of three estimated amounts, one of which is this Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement.⁴⁴

The R&W Plan is designed as a roadmap, and the types of actions that may be taken both leading up to and in connection with implementation of the Wind-down Plan would be primarily addressed in other supporting documentation referred to therein.

⁴³ See supra note 4.

⁴⁴ See supra note 4.

The Wind-down Plan would address proposed Rule 32(A) (Wind-down of the Corporation and proposed Rule 38 (Force Majeure and Market Disruption)), which would be adopted to facilitate the implementation of the Wind-down Plan, as discussed below.

Proposed Rules

In connection with the adoption of the R&W Plan, DTC is proposing to adopt the Proposed Rules, each described below. The Proposed Rules would facilitate the execution of the R&W Plan and would provide Participants with transparency as to critical aspects of the Plan, particularly as they relate to the rights and responsibilities of both DTC and its Participants. The Proposed Rules also provide a legal basis to these aspects of the Plan.

Rule 32(A) (Wind-down of the Corporation)

The proposed Rule 32(A) (“Wind-down Rule”) would be adopted to facilitate the execution of the Wind-down Plan. The Wind-down Rule would include a proposed set of defined terms that would be applicable only to the provisions of this Proposed Rule. The Wind-down Rule would make clear that a wind-down of DTC’s business would occur (1) after a decision is made by the Board, and (2) in connection with the transfer of DTC’s services to a Transferee, as described therein. Generally, the proposed Wind-down Rule is designed to create clear mechanisms for the transfer of Eligible Participants and Pledgees, Settling Banks, DRS Agents, and FAST Agents (as these terms would be defined in the Wind-down Rule), and DTC’s inventory of financial assets in order to provide for continued access to critical services and to minimize disruption to the markets in the event the Wind-down Plan is initiated.

Wind-down Trigger. First, the Proposed Rule would make clear that the Board is responsible for initiating the Wind-down Plan, and would identify the criteria the Board would consider when making this determination. As provided for in the Wind-down Plan and in the proposed Wind-down Rule, the Board would initiate the Plan if, in the exercise of its business judgment and subject to its fiduciary duties, it has determined that the execution of the Recovery Plan has not or is not likely to restore DTC to viability as a going concern, and the implementation of the Wind-down Plan, including the transfer of DTC’s business, is in the best interests of DTC, its Participants and Pledgees, its shareholders and creditors, and the U.S. financial markets.

Identification of Critical Services; Designation of Dates and Times for Specific Actions. The Proposed Rule would provide that, upon making a determination to initiate the Wind-down Plan, the Board would identify the critical and non-critical services that would be transferred to the Transferee at the Transfer Time (as defined below and in the Proposed Rule), as well as any non-critical services that would not be transferred to the Transferee. The proposed Wind-down Rule would establish that any services transferred to the Transferee will only be provided by the Transferee as of the Transfer Time, and that any non-critical services that are not transferred to the Transferee would be terminated at the Transfer Time. The Proposed Rule would also provide that the Board would establish (1) an effective time for the transfer of DTC’s business to a Transferee (“Transfer Time”), and (2) the last day that instructions in respect of securities and other financial products may be effectuated through the facilities of DTC (the “Last Activity

Date”). The Proposed Rule would make clear that DTC would not accept any transactions for settlement after the Last Activity Date. Any transactions to be settled after the Transfer Time would be required to be submitted to the Transferee, and would not be DTC’s responsibility.

Notice Provisions. The proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that, upon a decision to implement the Wind-down Plan, DTC would provide its Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, Settling Banks and regulators with a notice that includes material information relating to the Wind-down Plan and the anticipated transfer of DTC’s Participants and business, including, for example, (1) a brief statement of the reasons for the decision to implement the Wind-down Plan; (2) identification of the Transferee and information regarding the transaction by which the transfer of DTC’s business would be effected; (3) the Transfer Time and Last Activity Date; and (4) identification of Participants and the critical and non-critical services that would be transferred to the Transferee at the Transfer Time, as well as those Non-Eligible Participants (as defined below and in the Proposed Rule) and any non-critical services that would not be included in the transfer. DTC would also make available the rules and procedures and membership agreements of the Transferee.

Transfer of Membership. The proposed Wind-down Rule would address the expected transfer of DTC’s membership to the Transferee, which DTC would seek to effectuate by entering into an arrangement with a Failover Transferee, or by using commercially reasonable efforts to enter into such an arrangement with a Third Party Transferee. Thus, under the proposal, in connection with the implementation of the Wind-down Plan and with no further action required by any party:

- (1) each Eligible Participant would become (i) a Participant of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Participants agreement with the Transferee;
- (2) each Participant that is delinquent in the performance of any obligation to DTC or that has provided notice of its election to withdraw as a Participant (a “Non-Eligible Participant”) as of the Transfer Time would become (i) the holder of a transition period securities account maintained by the Transferee on its books (“Transition Period Securities Account”) and (ii) a party to a Transition Period Securities Account agreement of the Transferee;
- (3) each Pledgee would become (i) a Pledgee of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Pledgee agreement with the Transferee;
- (4) each DRS Agent would become (i) a DRS Agent of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a DRS Agent agreement with the Transferee;
- (5) each FAST Agent would become (i) a FAST Agent of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a FAST Agent agreement with the Transferee; and
- (6) each Settling Bank for Participants and Pledges would become (i) a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledges of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Settling Bank Agreement with the Transferee.

Further, the Proposed Rule would make clear that it would not prohibit (1) Non-Eligible Participants from applying for membership with the Transferee, (2) Non-Eligible Participants that have become holders of Transition Period Securities Accounts (“Transition Period Securities Account Holders”) of the Transferee from withdrawing as a Transition Period Securities Account Holder from the Transferee, subject to the rules and procedures of the Transferee, and (3) Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, and Settling Banks that would be transferred to the Transferee from withdrawing from membership with the Transferee, subject to the rules and procedures of the Transferee. Under the Proposed Rule, Non-Eligible Participants that have become Transition Period Securities Account Holders of the Transferee shall have the rights and be subject to the obligations of Transition Period Securities Account Holders set forth in special provisions of the rules and procedures of the Transferee applicable to such Transition Period Securities Account Holder. Specifically, Non-Eligible Participants that become Transition Period Securities Account Holders must, within the Transition Period (as defined in the Proposed Rule), instruct the Transferee to transfer the financial assets credited to its Transition Period Securities Account (i) to a Participant of the Transferee through the facilities of the Transferee or (ii) to a recipient outside the facilities of the Transferee, and no additional financial assets may be delivered versus payment to a Transition Period Securities Account during the Transition Period.

Transfer of Inventory of Financial Assets. The proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that DTC would enter into arrangements with a Failover Transferee, or would use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Third Party Transferee, providing that, in either case, at Transfer Time:

(1) DTC would transfer to the Transferee (i) its rights with respect to its nominee Cede & Co. (“Cede”) (and thereby its rights with respect to the financial assets owned of record by Cede), (ii) the financial assets held by it at the FRBNY, (iii) the financial assets held by it at other CSDs, (iv) the financial assets held in custody for it with FAST Agents, (v) the financial assets held in custody for it with other custodians and (vi) the financial assets it holds in physical custody.

(2) The Transferee would establish security entitlements on its books for Eligible Participants of DTC that become Participants of the Transferee that replicate the security entitlements that DTC maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time for such Eligible Participants, and DTC would simultaneously eliminate such security entitlements from its books.

(3) The Transferee would establish security entitlements on its books for Non-Eligible Participants of DTC that become Transition Period Securities Account Holders of the Transferee that replicate the security entitlements that DTC maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time for such Non-Eligible Participants, and DTC would simultaneously eliminate such security entitlements from its books.

(4) The Transferee would establish pledges on its books in favor of Pledgees that become Pledgees of the Transferee that replicate the pledges that DTC maintained on its books

immediately prior to the Transfer Time in favor of such Pledgees, and DTC shall simultaneously eliminate such pledges from its books.

Comparability Period. The proposed automatic mechanism for the transfer of DTC's membership is intended to provide DTC's membership with continuous access to critical services in the event of DTC's wind-down, and to facilitate the continued prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions. Further to this goal, the proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that DTC would enter into arrangements with a Failover Transferee, or would use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Third Party Transferee, providing that, in either case, with respect to the critical services and any non-critical services that are transferred from DTC to the Transferee, for at least a period of time to be agreed upon ("Comparability Period"), the business transferred from DTC to the Transferee would be operated in a manner that is comparable to the manner in which the business was previously operated by DTC. Specifically, the proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that: (1) the rules of the Transferee and terms of Participant, Pledgee, DRS Agent, FAST Agent and Settling Bank agreements would be comparable in substance and effect to the analogous Rules and agreements of DTC, (2) the rights and obligations of any Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, and Settling Banks that are transferred to the Transferee would be comparable in substance and effect to their rights and obligations as to DTC, and (3) the Transferee would operate the transferred business and provide any services that are transferred in a comparable manner to which such services were provided by DTC.

The purpose of these provisions and the intended effect of the proposed Wind-down Rule is to facilitate a smooth transition of DTC's business to a Transferee and to provide that, for at least the Comparability Period, the Transferee (1) would operate the transferred business in a manner that is comparable in substance and effect to the manner in which the business was operated by DTC, and (2) would not require sudden and disruptive changes in the systems, operations and business practices of the new Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, and Settling Banks of the Transferee.

Subordination of Claims Provisions and Miscellaneous Matters. The proposed Wind-down Rule would also include a provision addressing the subordination of unsecured claims against DTC of its Participants who fail to participate in DTC's recovery efforts (*i.e.*, such firms are delinquent in their obligations to DTC or elect to retire from DTC in order to minimize their obligations with respect to the allocation of losses, pursuant to the Rules). This provision is designed to incentivize Participants to participate in DTC's recovery efforts.⁴⁵

⁴⁵ Nothing in the proposed Wind-down Rule would seek to prevent a Participant that retired its membership at DTC from applying for membership with the Transferee. Once its DTC membership is terminated, however, such firm would not be able to benefit from the membership assignment that would be effected by this proposed Wind-down Rule, and it would have to apply for membership directly with the Transferee, subject to its membership application and review process.

The proposed Wind-down Rule would address other ex-ante matters, including provisions providing that its Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks (1) will assist and cooperate with DTC to effectuate the transfer of DTC's business to a Transferee, (2) consent to the provisions of the rule, and (3) grant DTC power of attorney to execute and deliver on their behalf documents and instruments that may be requested by the Transferee. Finally, the Proposed Rule would include a limitation of liability for any actions taken or omitted to be taken by DTC pursuant to the Proposed Rule. The purpose of the limitation of liability is to facilitate and protect DTC's ability to act expeditiously in response to extraordinary events. As noted, such limitation of liability would be available only following triggering of the Wind-down Plan. In addition, and as a separate matter, the limitation of liability provides Participants with transparency for the unlikely situation when those extraordinary events could occur, as well supporting the legal framework within which DTC would take such actions. These provisions, collectively, are designed to enable DTC to take such acts as the Board determines necessary to effectuate an orderly transfer and wind-down of its business should recovery efforts prove unsuccessful.

Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure)

The proposed Rule 38 ("Force Majeure Rule") would address DTC's authority to take certain actions upon the occurrence, and during the pendency, of a "Market Disruption Event," as defined therein. The Proposed Rule is designed to clarify DTC's ability to take actions to address extraordinary events outside of the control of DTC and of its membership, and to mitigate the effect of such events by facilitating the continuity of services (or, if deemed necessary, the temporary suspension of services). To that end, under the proposed Force Majeure Rule, DTC would be entitled, during the pendency of a Market Disruption Event, to (1) suspend the provision of any or all services, and (2) take, or refrain from taking, or require its Participants and Pledgees to take, or refrain from taking, any actions it considers appropriate to address, alleviate, or mitigate the event and facilitate the continuation of DTC's services as may be practicable.

The proposed Force Majeure Rule would identify the events or circumstances that would be considered a "Market Disruption Event," including, for example, events that lead to the suspension or limitation of trading or banking in the markets in which DTC operates, or the unavailability or failure of any material payment, bank transfer, wire or securities settlement systems. The proposed Force Majeure Rule would define the governance procedures for how DTC would determine whether, and how, to implement the provisions of the rule. A determination that a Market Disruption Event has occurred would generally be made by the Board, but the Proposed Rule would provide for limited, interim delegation of authority to a specified officer or management committee if the Board would not be able to take timely action. In the event such delegated authority is exercised, the proposed Force Majeure Rule would require that the Board be convened as promptly as practicable, no later than five Business Days after such determination has been made, to ratify, modify, or rescind the action. The proposed Force Majeure Rule would also provide for prompt notification to the Commission, and advance consultation with Commission staff, when practicable, including notification when an event is no longer continuing and the relevant actions are terminated. The Proposed Rule would require Participants and Pledgees to notify DTC immediately upon becoming aware of a Market

Disruption Event, and, likewise, would require DTC to notify its Participants and Pledges if it has triggered the Proposed Rule and of actions taken or intended to be taken thereunder.

Finally, the Proposed Rule would address other related matters, including a limitation of liability for any failure or delay in performance, in whole or in part, arising out of the Market Disruption Event. The purpose of the limitation of liability would be similar to the purpose of the analogous provision in the proposed Wind-down Rule, which is to facilitate and protect DTC's ability to act expeditiously in response to extraordinary events.

(b) Statutory Basis

DTC believes that the proposal is consistent with the requirements of the Act and the rules and regulations thereunder applicable to a registered clearing agency. In particular, DTC believes that the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with Section 17A(b)(3)(F) of the Act,⁴⁶ the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act,⁴⁷ and the R&W Plan is consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii) under the Act,⁴⁸ for the reasons described below.

Section 17A(b)(3)(F) of the Act requires, in part, that the rules of DTC be designed to promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions, and to assure the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible.⁴⁹ The Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule would promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions by providing DTC with a roadmap for actions it may employ to mitigate losses, and monitor and, as needed, stabilize, its financial condition, which would allow it to continue its critical clearance and settlement services in stress situations. Further, as described above, the Recovery Plan is designed to identify the actions and tools DTC may use to address and minimize losses to both DTC and its Participants. The Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule would provide DTC's management and the Board with guidance in this regard by identifying the indicators and governance around the use and application of such tools to enable them to address stress situations in a manner most appropriate for the circumstances. Therefore, the Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule would also contribute to the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible by enabling actions that would address and minimize losses.

The Wind-down Plan and the proposed Wind-down Rule, which would facilitate the implementation of the Wind-down Plan, would also promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions and assure the safeguarding of securities and funds

⁴⁶ 15 U.S.C. 78q-1(b)(3)(F).

⁴⁷ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

⁴⁸ Id. at 240.17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii).

⁴⁹ 15 U.S.C. 78q-1(b)(3)(F).

which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible. The Wind-down Plan and the proposed Wind-down Rule would collectively establish a framework for the transfer and orderly wind-down of DTC's business. These proposals would establish clear mechanisms for the transfer of DTC's critical services and membership as well as clear provision for the transfer of the securities inventory it holds in fungible bulk for Participants. By doing so, the Wind-down Plan and these Proposed Rules are designed to facilitate the continuity of DTC's critical services and enable its Participants and Pledges to maintain access to DTC's services through the transfer of its membership in the event DTC defaults or the Wind-down Plan is triggered by the Board. Therefore, by facilitating the continuity of DTC's critical clearance and settlement services, DTC believes the proposals would promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions. Further, by creating a framework for the transfer and orderly wind-down of DTC's business, DTC believes the proposals would enhance the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible.

Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with the requirements of Section 17A(b)(3)(F) of the Act.⁵⁰

Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act requires DTC to establish, implement, maintain and enforce written policies and procedures reasonably designed to maintain a sound risk management framework for comprehensively managing legal, credit, liquidity, operational, general business, investment, custody, and other risks that arise in or are borne by the covered clearing agency, which includes plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of the covered clearing agency necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses.⁵¹ The R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are designed to meet the requirements of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

The R&W Plan would be maintained by DTC in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) in that it provides plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of DTC necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses, as described above.⁵² Specifically, the Recovery Plan would define the risk management activities, stress conditions and indicators, and tools that DTC may use to address stress scenarios that could eventually prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. Through the framework of the Crisis Continuum, the Recovery Plan would address measures that DTC may take to address risks of credit losses and liquidity shortfalls, and other losses that could arise from a Participant Default. The Recovery Plan would also address the management of general business risks and other non-default risks that could lead to losses.

⁵⁰ Id.

⁵¹ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

⁵² Id.

The Wind-down Plan would be triggered by a determination by the Board that recovery efforts have not been, or are unlikely to be, successful in returning DTC to viability as a going concern. Once triggered, the Wind-down Plan would set forth clear mechanisms for the transfer of DTC's membership and business, and would be designed to facilitate continued access to DTC's critical services and to minimize market impact of the transfer. By establishing the framework and strategy for the execution of the transfer and wind-down of DTC in order to facilitate continuous access to DTC's critical services, the Wind-down Plan establishes a plan for the orderly wind-down of DTC. Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan would provide plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of the covered clearing agency necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses, and, as such, meets the requirements of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁵³

As described in greater detail above, the Proposed Rules are designed to facilitate the execution of the R&W Plan, provide Participants with transparency regarding the material provisions of the Plan, and provide DTC with a legal basis for implementation of those provisions. As such, DTC also believes the Proposed Rules meet the requirements of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁵⁴

DTC has evaluated the recovery tools that would be identified in the Recovery Plan and has determined that these tools are comprehensive, effective, and transparent, and that such tools provide appropriate incentives to DTC's Participants to manage the risks they present. The recovery tools, as outlined in the Recovery Plan and in the proposed Force Majeure Rule, provide DTC with a comprehensive set of options to address its material risks and support the resiliency of its critical services under a range of stress scenarios. DTC also believes the recovery tools are effective, as DTC has both legal basis and operational capability to execute these tools in a timely and reliable manner. Many of the recovery tools are provided for in the Rules; Participants are bound by the Rules through their Participants Agreements with DTC, and the Rules are adopted pursuant to a framework established by Rule 19b-4 under the Act,⁵⁵ providing a legal basis for the recovery tools found therein. Other recovery tools have legal basis in contractual arrangements to which DTC is a party, as described above. Further, as many of the tools are embedded in DTC's ongoing risk management practices or are embedded into its predefined default-management procedures, DTC is able to execute these tools, in most cases, when needed and without material operational or organizational delay.

The majority of the recovery tools are also transparent, as they are or are proposed to be included in the Rules, which are publicly available. DTC believes the recovery tools also provide appropriate incentives to its owners and Participants, as they are designed to control the amount of risk they present to DTC's clearance and settlement system. Finally, DTC's Recovery Plan provides for a continuous evaluation of the systemic consequences of executing its recovery

⁵³ Id.

⁵⁴ Id.

⁵⁵ Id. at 240.19b-4.

tools, with the goal of minimizing their negative impact. The Recovery Plan would outline various indicators over a timeline of increasing stress, the Crisis Continuum, with escalation triggers to DTC management or the Board, as appropriate. This approach would allow for timely evaluation of the situation and the possible impacts of the use of a recovery tool in order to minimize the negative effects of the stress scenario. Therefore, DTC believes that the recovery tools that would be identified and described in its Recovery Plan, including the authority provided to it in the proposed Force Majeure Rule, would meet the criteria identified within guidance published by the Commission in connection with the adoption of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁵⁶

Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁵⁷

Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii) under the Act requires DTC to establish, implement, maintain and enforce written policies and procedures reasonably designed to identify, monitor, and manage its general business risk and hold sufficient LNA to cover potential general business losses so that DTC can continue operations and services as a going concern if those losses materialize, including by holding LNA equal to the greater of either (x) six months of the covered clearing agency's current operating expenses, or (y) the amount determined by the board of directors to be sufficient to ensure a recovery or orderly wind-down of critical operations and services of the covered clearing agency.⁵⁸ While the Capital Policy addresses how DTC holds LNA in compliance with these requirements, the Wind-down Plan would include an analysis that would estimate the amount of time and the costs to achieve a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC's critical operations and services, and would provide that the Board review and approve this analysis and estimation annually. The Wind-down Plan would also provide that the estimate would be the "Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement" under the Capital Policy. Under that policy, the General Business Risk Capital Requirement, which is the sufficient amount of LNA that DTC should hold to cover potential general business losses so that it can continue operations and services as a going concern if those losses materialize, is calculated as the greatest of three estimated amounts, one of which is this Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement. Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan, as it interrelates with the Capital Policy, is consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii).⁵⁹

4. Self-Regulatory Organization's Statement on Burden on Competition

DTC does not believe the proposal would have any impact, or impose any burden, on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purpose of the Act.⁶⁰ The

⁵⁶ Supra note 36.

⁵⁷ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

⁵⁸ Id. at 240.17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii).

⁵⁹ Id.

⁶⁰ 15 U.S.C. 78q-1(b)(3)(I).

proposal would apply uniformly to all Participants and Pledgees. DTC does not anticipate that the proposal would affect its day-to-day operations under normal circumstances, or in the management of a typical Participant default scenario or non-default event. DTC is not proposing to alter the standards or requirements for becoming or remaining a Participant or Pledgee, or otherwise using its services. DTC also does not propose to change its methodology for calculation of Participants Fund contributions. The proposal is intended to (1) address the risk of loss events and identify the tools and resources available to it to withstand and recover from such events, so that it can restore normal operations, and (2) provide a framework for its orderly wind-down and the transfer of its business in the event those recovery tools do not restore DTC to financial viability, as described herein.

The R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules have been developed and documented in order to satisfy applicable regulatory requirements, as discussed above.

With respect to the Recovery Plan, the proposal generally reflects DTC's existing tools and existing internal procedures. Existing tools that would have a direct impact on the rights, responsibilities or obligations of Participants are reflected in the existing Rules or are proposed to be included in the Rules. Accordingly, the Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule are intended to provide a roadmap, define the strategy and identify the tools available to DTC in connection with its recovery efforts. By proposing to enhance DTC's existing internal management and its regulatory compliance related to its recovery efforts, DTC does not believe the Recovery Plan or the proposed Force Majeure Rule would have any impact, or impose any burden, on competition.

With respect to the Wind-down Plan and the proposed Wind-down Rule, which facilitate the execution of the Wind-down Plan, the proposal would operate to effect the transfer of all eligible Participants and Pledgees to the Transferee, and would not prohibit any market participant from either bidding to become the Transferee or from applying for membership with the Transferee. The proposal also would not prohibit any Participant or Pledgee from withdrawing from DTC prior to the Transfer Time, as is permitted under the Rules today, or from applying for membership with the Transferee. Therefore, as the proposal would treat each similarly situated Participant and Pledgee identically under the Wind-down Plan and under the Proposed Wind-down Rule, DTC does not believe the Wind-down Plan or the proposed Wind-down Rule would have any impact, or impose any burden, on competition.

5. Self-Regulatory Organization's Statement on Comments on the Proposed Rule Change Received from Participants, Participants, or Others

While DTC has not solicited or received any written comments relating to this proposal, DTC has conducted outreach to its Participants in order to provide them with notice of the proposal. DTC will notify the Commission of any written comments received by DTC.

6. Extension of Time Period for Commission Action

DTC does not consent to an extension of the time period specified in Section 19(b)(2) of the Act for Commission action.⁶¹

7. Basis for Summary Effectiveness Pursuant to Section 19(b)(3) or for Accelerated Effectiveness Pursuant to Section 19(b)(2)

- (a) Not applicable.
- (b) Not applicable.
- (c) Not applicable.
- (d) Not applicable.

8. Proposed Rule Change Based on Rules of Another Self-Regulatory Organization or of the Commission

Not applicable.

9. Security-Based Swap Submissions Filed Pursuant to Section 3C of the Act

Not applicable.

10. Advance Notice Filed Pursuant to Section 806(e) of the Payment, Clearing and Settlement Supervision Act of 2010

Not applicable.

11. Exhibits

Exhibit 1 Not applicable.

Exhibit 1A Notice of proposal for publication in the Federal Register.

Exhibit 2 Not applicable.

Exhibit 3 Not applicable.

Exhibit 4 R&W Plan (marked). **Omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment of this Exhibit 4 pursuant to 17 CFR 240.24b-2 being requested.**

⁶¹ 15 U.S.C. 78s(b)(2).

Exhibit 5a R&W Plan (revised). **Omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment of this Exhibit 5a pursuant to 17 CFR 240.24b-2 being requested.**

Exhibit 5b Proposed changes to the Rules.

SR-DTC-2017-021 Amendment No. 1
EXHIBIT 1A

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
(Release No. 34-[_____]; File No. SR-DTC-2017-021)

[DATE]

Self-Regulatory Organizations; The Depository Trust Company; Notice of Filing of Amendment No. 1 Proposed Rule Change to Adopt the Recovery & Wind-down Plan and Related Rules

On December 18, 2017, The Depository Trust Company (“DTC”) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (“Commission”) a proposed rule change to adopt the Recovery & Wind-down Plan and related rules (SR-DTC-2017-021) (“Proposed Rule Change”), pursuant to Section 19(b)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (“Act”)¹ and Rule 19b-4 thereunder.² The Proposed Rule Change was published in the Federal Register on January 8, 2018.³ On February 8, 2018, the Commission designated a longer

¹ 15 U.S.C. 78s(b)(1).

² 17 CFR 240.19b-4. On December 18, 2017, DTC filed this proposal as an advance notice (SR-DTC-2017-803) with the Commission pursuant to Section 806(e)(1) of the Payment, Clearing, and Settlement Supervision Act of 2010 (“Clearing Supervision Act”) and Rule 19b-4(n)(1)(i) of the Act (“Advance Notice”). On January 30, 2018, the Commission published in the Federal Register notices of filing of the Advance Notice. These notices also extended the review period for the Advance Notice pursuant to Section 806(e)(1)(H) of the Clearing Supervision Act. (12 U.S.C. 5465(e)(1)(H).) See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 82579 (January 24, 2018), 83 FR 4310 (January 30, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-803). On April 10, 2018, the Commission required further information for consideration of the Advance Notice, pursuant to Section 806(e)(1)(D) of the Clearing Supervision Act, which provided the Commission with a renewed 60-day review period beginning on the date that the information requested is received by the Commission. (12 U.S.C. 5465(e)(1)(D).) As of the date of this release, the Commission has not yet received the requested information.

³ Securities Exchange Act Release No. 82432 (January 2, 2018), 83 FR 884 (January 8, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-021).

period within which to approve, disapprove, or institute proceedings to determine whether to approve or disapprove the Proposed Rule Change.⁴ On March 20, 2018, the Commission instituted proceedings pursuant to Section 19(b)(2)(B) of the Act⁵ to determine whether to approve or disapprove the Proposed Rule Change.⁶ The Commission did not receive any comments on the Proposed Rule Change.

Notice is hereby given that on June __, 2018, DTC filed with the Commission an amendment to the Proposed Rule Change as described in Items I, II and III below, which Items have been prepared by the clearing agency. The Commission is publishing this notice to solicit comments on the proposed rule change from interested persons.

I. Clearing Agency's Statement of the Terms of Substance of the Proposed Rule Change

The Proposed Rule Change of DTC proposes to (1) adopt the Recovery & Wind-down Plan of DTC ("R&W Plan" or "Plan"); and (2) amend the Rules, By-Laws and Organization Certificate of DTC ("Rules")⁷ in order to adopt Rule 32(A) (Wind-down of the Corporation) and Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure) (each proposed Rule 32(A) and proposed Rule 38, a "Proposed Rule" and, collectively, the "Proposed Rules").

⁴ Securities Exchange Act Release No. 82669 (February 8, 2018), 83 FR 6653 (February 14, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-021).

⁵ 15 U.S.C. 78s(b)(2)(B).

⁶ Securities Exchange Act Release No. 82912 (March 20, 2018), 83 FR 12999 (March 26, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-021).

⁷ Capitalized terms used herein and not otherwise defined herein are defined in the Rules, available at www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/rules/DTC_rules.pdf.

The R&W Plan would be maintained by DTC in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act by providing plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of DTC necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses, as described below.⁸ The Proposed Rules are designed to (1) facilitate the implementation of the R&W Plan when necessary and, in particular, allow DTC to effectuate its strategy for winding down and transferring its business; (2) provide Participants with transparency around critical provisions of the R&W Plan that relate to their rights, responsibilities and obligations; and (3) provide DTC with the legal basis to implement those provisions of the R&W Plan when necessary, as described below.

II. Clearing Agency's Statement of the Purpose of, and Statutory Basis for, the Proposed Rule Change

In its filing with the Commission, the clearing agency included statements concerning the purpose of and basis for the proposed rule change and discussed any comments it received on the proposed rule change. The text of these statements may be examined at the places specified in Item IV below. The clearing agency has prepared summaries, set forth in sections A, B, and C below, of the most significant aspects of such statements.

⁸ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

(A) Clearing Agency's Statement of the Purpose of, and Statutory Basis for, the Proposed Rule Change

1. Purpose

Description of Amendment No. 1

This filing constitutes Amendment No. 1 (“Amendment”) to the Proposed Rule Change (also referred to below as the “Original Filing”) previously filed by DTC.⁹ DTC is amending the proposed R&W Plan and the Original Filing in order to clarify certain matters and make minor technical and conforming changes to the R&W Plan, as described below and as marked on Exhibit 4 hereto. To the extent such changes to the Plan require changes to the Original Filing, the information provided under “*Description of Proposed Changes*” in the Original Filing has been amended and is restated in its entirety below. Other sections of the Original Filing are unchanged and are restated in their entirety for convenience.

First, this Amendment would clarify the use in the Plan of the term “Participant Default Losses.” This Amendment would also clarify the actions and tools available in the third phase of the Crisis Continuum, which is referred to as the “Participant Default phase.” This Amendment would also make conforming changes as necessary to reflect the use of these terms.

⁹ See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 82579 (January 24, 2018), 83 FR 4310 (January 30, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-803).

Second, this Amendment would clarify that actions and tools described in the Plan that are available in one phase of the Crisis Continuum may be used in subsequent phases of the Crisis Continuum, when appropriate to address the applicable situation. This Amendment would also clarify that allocation of losses resulting from a Participant Default would be applied when provide for in, and in accordance with, Rule 4.

Third, this Amendment would clarify that the Recovery Corridor (as defined therein) is not a “sub-phase” of the recovery phase. Rather, the Recovery Corridor is a period of time that would occur toward the end of the Participant Default phase, when indicators are that DTC may transition into the recovery phase. Thus, the Recovery Corridor precedes the recovery phase.

Fourth, this Amendment would make revisions to address the allocation of losses resulting from a Participant Default in order to more closely conform such statements to the changes proposed by the Loss Allocation Filing, as defined below.

Fifth, this Amendment would clarify the notifications that DTC would be required to make under the Proposed Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure).

Finally, this Amendment would make minor, technical and conforming revisions to correct typographical errors and to simplify descriptions. For example, such revisions would use lower case for terms that are not defined therein, and would use upper case for terms that are defined. The Amendment would also simplify certain descriptions by removing extraneous words and statements that are repetitive. These minor, technical revisions would not alter the substance of the proposal.

Description of Proposed Changes

DTC is proposing to adopt the R&W Plan to be used by the Board and management in the event DTC encounters scenarios that could potentially prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. The R&W Plan would identify (i) the recovery tools available to DTC to address the risks of (a) uncovered losses or liquidity shortfalls resulting from the default of one or more of its Participants, and (b) losses arising from non-default events, such as damage to its physical assets, a cyber-attack, or custody and investment losses, and (ii) the strategy for implementation of such tools. The R&W Plan would also establish the strategy and framework for the orderly wind-down of DTC and the transfer of its business in the remote event the implementation of the available recovery tools does not successfully return DTC to financial viability.

As discussed in greater detail below, the R&W Plan would provide, among other matters, (i) an overview of the business of DTC and its parent, The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation (“DTCC”); (ii) an analysis of DTC’s intercompany arrangements and critical links to other financial market infrastructures (“FMIs”); (iii) a description of DTC’s services, and the criteria used to determine which services are considered critical; (iv) a description of the DTC and DTCC governance structure; (v) a description of the governance around the overall recovery and wind-down program; (vi) a discussion of tools available to DTC to mitigate credit/market and liquidity risks, including recovery indicators and triggers, and the governance around management of a stress event along a “Crisis Continuum” timeline; (vii) a discussion of potential non-default losses and the resources available to DTC to address such losses, including recovery triggers and tools

to mitigate such losses; (viii) an analysis of the recovery tools' characteristics, including how they are comprehensive, effective, and transparent, how the tools provide appropriate incentives to Participants to, among other things, control and monitor the risks they may present to DTC, and how DTC seeks to minimize the negative consequences of executing its recovery tools; and (ix) the framework and approach for the orderly wind-down and transfer of DTC's business, including an estimate of the time and costs to effect a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC.

The R&W Plan would be structured as a roadmap, and would identify and describe the tools that DTC may use to effect a recovery from the events and scenarios described therein. Certain recovery tools that would be identified in the R&W Plan are based in the Rules (including the Proposed Rules) and, as such, descriptions of those tools would include descriptions of, and reference to, the applicable Rules and any related internal policies and procedures. Other recovery tools that would be identified in the R&W Plan are based in contractual arrangements to which DTC is a party, including, for example, existing committed or pre-arranged liquidity arrangements. Further, the R&W Plan would state that DTC may develop further supporting internal guidelines and materials that may provide operationally for matters described in the Plan, and that such documents would be supplemental and subordinate to the Plan.

Key factors considered in developing the R&W Plan and the types of tools available to DTC were its governance structure and the nature of the markets within which DTC operates. As a result of these considerations, many of the tools available to DTC that would be described in the R&W Plan are DTC's existing, business-as-usual risk management and default management tools, which would continue to be applied in

scenarios of increasing stress. In addition to these existing, business-as-usual tools, the R&W Plan would describe DTC's other principal recovery tools, which include, for example, (i) identifying, monitoring and managing general business risk and holding sufficient liquid net assets funded by equity ("LNA") to cover potential general business losses pursuant to the Clearing Agency Policy on Capital Requirements ("Capital Policy"),¹⁰ (ii) maintaining the Clearing Agency Capital Replenishment Plan ("Replenishment Plan") as a viable plan for the replenishment of capital should DTC's equity fall close to or below the amount being held pursuant to the Capital Policy,¹¹ and (iii) the process for the allocation of losses among Participants as provided in Rule 4.¹² The R&W Plan would provide governance around the selection and implementation of the recovery tool or tools most relevant to mitigate a stress scenario and any applicable loss or liquidity shortfall.

¹⁰ See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 81105 (July 7, 2017), 82 FR 32399 (July 13, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-003; SR-FICC-2017-007; SR-NSCC-2017-004).

¹¹ See id.

¹² See Rule 4 (Participants Fund and Participants Investment), supra note 7. DTC is proposing changes to Rule 4 regarding allocation of losses in a separate filing submitted simultaneously with the Original Filing. See Securities Exchange Act Release Nos. 82432 (January 2, 2018), 83 FR 884 (January 8, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-021) and 82579 (January 24, 2018), 83 FR 4310 (January 30, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-803) (collectively referred to herein as the "Loss Allocation Filing"). DTC has submitted an amendment to the Loss Allocation Filing. A copy of the amendment to the Loss Allocation Filing is available at <http://www.dtcc.com/legal/sec-rule-filings.aspx>. DTC expects the Commission to review both proposals, as amended, together, and, as such, the proposal described in this filing anticipates the approval and implementation of those proposed changes to the Rules.

The development of the R&W Plan is facilitated by the Office of Recovery & Resolution Planning (“R&R Team”) of DTCC.¹³ The R&R Team reports to the DTCC Management Committee (“Management Committee”) and is responsible for maintaining the R&W Plan and for the development and ongoing maintenance of the overall recovery and wind-down planning process. The Board, or such committees as may be delegated authority by the Board from time to time pursuant to its charter, would review and approve the R&W Plan biennially, and would also review and approve any changes that are proposed to the R&W Plan outside of the biennial review.

As discussed in greater detail below, the Proposed Rules would define the procedures that may be employed in the event of a DTC wind-down, and would provide for DTC’s authority to take certain actions on the occurrence of a “Market Disruption Event,” as defined therein. Significantly, the Proposed Rules would provide Participants with transparency and certainty with respect to these matters. The Proposed Rules would facilitate the implementation of the R&W Plan, particularly DTC’s strategy for winding down and transferring its business, and would provide DTC with the legal basis to implement those aspects of the R&W Plan.

DTC R&W Plan

The R&W Plan is intended to be used by the Board and DTC’s management in the event DTC encounters scenarios that could potentially prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. The R&W Plan would be structured to

¹³ DTCC operates on a shared services model with respect to DTC and its other subsidiaries. Most corporate functions are established and managed on an enterprise-wide basis pursuant to intercompany agreements under which it is generally DTCC that provides a relevant service to a subsidiary, including DTC.

provide a roadmap, define the strategy, and identify the tools available to DTC to either (i) recover, in the event it experiences losses that exceed its prefunded resources (such strategies and tools referred to herein as the “Recovery Plan”) or (ii) wind-down its business in a manner designed to permit the continuation of its critical services in the event that such recovery efforts are not successful (such strategies and tools referred to herein as the “Wind-down Plan”). The description of the R&W Plan below is intended to highlight the purpose and expected effects of the material aspects of the R&W Plan, and to provide Participants with appropriate transparency into these features.

Business Overview, Critical Services, and Governance

The introduction to the R&W Plan would identify the document’s purpose and its regulatory background, and would outline a summary of the Plan. The stated purpose of the R&W Plan is that it is to be used by the Board and DTC management in the event DTC encounters scenarios that could potentially prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. The R&W Plan would be maintained by DTC in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act¹⁴ by providing plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of DTC.

The R&W Plan would describe DTCC’s business profile, provide a summary of DTC’s services, and identify the intercompany arrangements and critical links between DTC and other FMIs. This overview section would provide a context for the R&W Plan by describing DTC’s business, organizational structure and critical links to other entities. By providing this context, this section would facilitate the analysis of the potential impact

¹⁴ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

of utilizing the recovery tools set forth in later sections of the Recovery Plan, and the analysis of the factors that would be addressed in implementing the Wind-down Plan.

DTCC is a user-owned and user-governed holding company and is the parent company of DTC and its affiliates, National Securities Clearing Corporation (“NSCC”) and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation (“FICC,” and, together with NSCC and DTC, the “Clearing Agencies”). The Plan would describe how corporate support services are provided to DTC from DTCC and DTCC’s other subsidiaries through intercompany agreements under a shared services model.

The Plan would provide a description of established links between DTC and other FMIs, both domestic and foreign, including central securities depositories (“CSDs”) and central counterparties (“CCPs”), as well as the twelve U.S. Federal Reserve Banks. In general, these links are either “inbound” or “issuer” links, in which the other FMI is a Participant and/or a Pledgee and maintains one or more accounts at DTC, or “outbound” or “investor” links in which DTC maintains one or more accounts at another FMI. Key FMIs with which DTC maintains critical links include CDS Clearing and Depository Services Inc. (“CDS”), the Canadian CSD, with participant links in both directions; Euroclear Bank SA/NV (“EB”) for cross-border collateral management services; and The Options Clearing Corporation (“OCC”) and the Federal Reserve Bank of New York (“FRBNY”), each of which is both a Participant and a Pledgee. The critical link for the U.S. marketplace is the relationship between DTC and NSCC, through which continuous net settlement (“CNS”) transactions are completed by settlement at DTC, and DTC acts

as settlement agent for NSCC for end-of-day funds settlement.¹⁵ This section of the Plan, identifying and briefly describing DTC's established links, would provide a mapping of critical connections and dependencies that may need to be relied on or otherwise addressed in connection with the implementation of either the Recovery Plan or the Wind-down Plan.

The Plan would define the criteria for classifying certain of DTC's services as "critical," and would identify those critical services and the rationale for their classification. This section would provide an analysis of the potential systemic impact from a service disruption, and is important for evaluating how the recovery tools and the wind-down strategy would facilitate and provide for the continuation of DTC's critical services to the markets it serves. The criteria that would be used to identify a DTC service or function as critical would include consideration as to (1) whether there is a lack of alternative providers or products; (2) whether failure of the service could impact DTC's ability to perform its book-entry and settlement services; (3) whether failure of the service could impact DTC's ability to perform its payment system functions; and (4) whether the service is interconnected with other participants and processes within the U.S. financial system, for example, with other FMIs, settlement banks and broker-dealers. The Plan would then list each of those services, functions or activities that DTC has identified as "critical" based on the applicability of these four criteria. Such critical services would include, for example, MMIs and Commercial Paper Processing,¹⁶

¹⁵ DTC has other links in addition to those mentioned above. The current list of linked CSDs is available on the DTCC website.

¹⁶ See Rule 9(C) (Transactions in MMI Securities), supra note 7.

Mandatory and Voluntary Corporate Actions,¹⁷ Cash and Stock Distributions,¹⁸ and End of Day Net Money Settlement.¹⁹ The R&W Plan would also include a non-exhaustive list of DTC services that are not deemed critical.

The evaluation of which services provided by DTC are deemed critical is important for purposes of determining how the R&W Plan would facilitate the continuity of those services. As discussed further below, while DTC's Wind-down Plan would provide for the transfer of all critical services to a transferee in the event DTC's wind-down is implemented, it would anticipate that any non-critical services that are ancillary and beneficial to a critical service, or that otherwise have substantial user demand from the continuing membership, would also be transferred.

The Plan would describe the governance structure of both DTCC and DTC. This section of the Plan would identify the ownership and governance model of these entities at both the Board of Directors and management levels. The Plan would state that the stages of escalation required to manage recovery under the Recovery Plan or to invoke DTC's wind-down under the Wind-down Plan would range from relevant business line managers up to the Board through DTC's governance structure. The Plan would then identify the parties responsible for certain activities under both the Recovery Plan and the

¹⁷ See DTC Reorganizations Service Guide, available at www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/service-guides/Reorganizations.pdf.

¹⁸ See DTC Distributions Service Guide, available at <http://www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/service-guides/Service%20Guide%20Distributions.pdf>.

¹⁹ See DTC Settlement Service Guide, available at www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/service-guides/Settlement.pdf.

Wind-down Plan, and would describe their respective roles. The Plan would identify the Risk Committee of the Board (“Board Risk Committee”) as being responsible for oversight of risk management activities at DTC, which include focusing on both oversight of risk management systems and processes designed to identify and manage various risks faced by DTC, and, due to DTC’s critical role in the markets in which it operates, oversight of DTC’s efforts to mitigate systemic risks that could impact those markets and the broader financial system.²⁰ The Plan would identify the DTCC Management Risk Committee (“Management Risk Committee”) as primarily responsible for general, day-to-day risk management through delegated authority from the Board Risk Committee. The Plan would state that the Management Risk Committee has delegated specific day-to-day risk management, including management of risks addressed through margining systems and related activities, to the DTCC Group Chief Risk Office (“GCRO”), which works with staff within the DTCC Financial Risk Management group. Finally, the Plan would describe the role of the Management Committee, which provides overall direction for all aspects of DTC’s business, technology, and operations and the functional areas that support these activities.

The Plan would describe the governance of recovery efforts in response to both default losses and non-default losses under the Recovery Plan, identifying the groups responsible for those recovery efforts. Specifically, the Plan would state that the Management Risk Committee provides oversight of actions relating to the default of a Participant, which would be reported and escalated to it through the GCRO, and the

²⁰ The charter of the Board Risk Committee is available at <http://www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/policy-and-compliance/DTCC-BOD-Risk-Committee-Charter.pdf>.

Management Committee provides oversight of actions relating to non-default events that could result in a loss, which would be reported and escalated to it from the DTCC Chief Financial Officer (“CFO”) and the DTCC Treasury group that reports to the CFO, and from other relevant subject matter experts based on the nature and circumstances of the non-default event.²¹ More generally, the Plan would state that the type of loss and the nature and circumstances of the events that lead to the loss would dictate the components of governance to address that loss, including the escalation path to authorize those actions. As described further below, both the Recovery Plan and the Wind-down Plan would describe the governance of escalations, decisions, and actions under each of those plans.

Finally, the Plan would describe the role of the R&R Team in managing the overall recovery and wind-down program and plans for each of the Clearing Agencies.

DTC Recovery Plan

The Recovery Plan is intended to be a roadmap of those actions that DTC may employ to monitor and, as needed, stabilize its financial condition. As each event that could lead to a financial loss could be unique in its circumstances, the Recovery Plan would not be prescriptive and would permit DTC to maintain flexibility in its use of identified tools and in the sequence in which such tools are used, subject to any

²¹ The Plan would state that these groups would be involved to address how to mitigate the financial impact of non-default losses, and in recommending mitigating actions, the Management Committee would consider information and recommendations from relevant subject matter experts based on the nature and circumstances of the non-default event. Any necessary operational response to these events, however, would be managed in accordance with applicable incident response/business continuity process; for example, processes established by the DTCC Technology Risk Management group would be followed in response to a cyber event.

conditions in the Rules or the contractual arrangement on which such tool is based. DTC's Recovery Plan would consist of (1) a description of the risk management surveillance, tools, and governance that DTC would employ across evolving stress scenarios that it may face as it transitions through a "Crisis Continuum," described below; (2) a description of DTC's risk of losses that may result from non-default events, and the financial resources and recovery tools available to DTC to manage those risks and any resulting losses; and (3) an evaluation of the characteristics of the recovery tools that may be used in response to either losses arising out of a Participant Default (as defined below) or non-default losses, as described in greater detail below. In all cases, DTC would act in accordance with the Rules, within the governance structure described in the R&W Plan, and in accordance with applicable regulatory oversight to address each situation in order to best protect DTC, its Participants and the markets in which it operates.

Managing Participant Default Losses and Liquidity Needs Through the Crisis Continuum. The Plan would describe the risk management surveillance, tools, and governance that DTC may employ across an increasing stress environment, which is referred to as the "Crisis Continuum." This description would identify those tools that can be employed to mitigate losses, and mitigate or minimize liquidity needs, as the market environment becomes increasingly stressed. The phases of the Crisis Continuum would include (1) a stable market phase, (2) a stressed market phase, (3) a phase commencing with DTC's decision to cease to act for a Participant or Affiliated Family of

Participants (referred to in the Plan as the “Participant Default phase”),²² and (4) a recovery phase. This section of the Recovery Plan would address conditions and circumstances relating to DTC’s decision to cease to act for a Participant pursuant to the Rules.²³ For ease of reference, the R&W Plan would, for purposes of the Plan, use the term “Participant Default Losses” to refer to losses that arise out of or relate to the Participant Default and resulting cease to act (including any losses that arise from liquidation of the Participant’s Collateral).

The Recovery Plan would provide context to its roadmap through this Crisis Continuum by describing DTC’s ongoing management of credit, market risk and liquidity risk, and its existing process for measuring and reporting its risks as they align with established thresholds for its tolerance of those risks. The Recovery Plan would discuss the management of credit/market risk and liquidity exposures together, because the tools that address these risks can be deployed either separately or in a coordinated approach in order to address both exposures. DTC manages these risk exposures collectively to limit their overall impact on DTC and its Participants. DTC has built-in mechanisms to limit exposures and replenish financial resources used in a stress event, in order to continue to operate in a safe and sound manner. DTC is a closed, collateralized system in which

²² The Plan defines an “Affiliated Family” of Participants as a number of affiliated entities that are all Participants of DTC.

²³ In the Plan, “cease to act” and the actions that may lead to such decision, are used within the context of the Rules, including Rule 4 (Participants Fund and Participants Investment), Rule 9(A) (Transactions in Securities and Money Payments), Rule 9(B) (Transactions in Eligible Securities), Rule 9(C) (Transactions in MMI Securities), Rule 10 (Discretionary Termination), Rule 11 (Mandatory Termination) and Rule 12 (Insolvency), supra note 7. Further, the term “Participant Default” would also be used in the Plan as such term is defined in Rule 4, as proposed to be amended by the Loss Allocation filing, supra note 12.

liquidity resources are matched against risk management controls, so, at any time, the potential net settlement obligation of the Participant or Affiliated Family of Participants with the largest net settlement obligation cannot exceed the amount of liquidity resources.²⁴ While Collateral securities are subject to market price risk, DTC manages its liquidity and market risks through the calculation of the required deposits to the Participants Fund²⁵ and risk management controls, i.e., collateral haircuts, the Collateral Monitor²⁶ and Net Debit Cap.²⁷

The Recovery Plan would outline the metrics and indicators that DTC has developed to evaluate a stress situation against established risk tolerance thresholds. Each risk mitigation tool identified in the Recovery Plan would include a description of the escalation thresholds that allow for effective and timely reporting to the appropriate internal management staff and committees, or to the Board. The Recovery Plan would

²⁴ DTC's liquidity risk management strategy, including the manner in which DTC would deploy liquidity tools as well as its intraday use of liquidity, is described in the Clearing Agency Liquidity Risk Management Framework. See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 80489 (April 19, 2017), 82 FR 19120 (April 25, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-004, SR-DTC-2017-005, SR-FICC-2017-008).

²⁵ See Rule 4 (Participants Fund and Participants Investment), supra note 7.

²⁶ See Rule 1, Section 1, supra note 7. For DTC, credit risk and market risk are closely related, as DTC monitors credit exposures from Participants through these risk management controls, which limit Participant settlement obligations to the amount of available liquidity resources and require those obligations to be fully collateralized. The pledge or liquidation of collateral in an amount sufficient to restore liquidity resources depends on market values and demand, *i.e.*, market risk exposure. Such risk management controls are part of DTC's market risk management strategy and are designed to comply with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(4) under the Act, where these risks are referred to as "credit risks." See also 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(4).

²⁷ Id.

make clear that these tools and escalation protocols would be calibrated across each phase of the Crisis Continuum. The Recovery Plan would also establish that DTC would retain the flexibility to deploy such tools either separately or in a coordinated approach, and to use other alternatives to these actions and tools as necessitated by the circumstances of a particular Participant Default event, in accordance with the Rules. Therefore, the Recovery Plan would both provide DTC with a roadmap to follow within each phase of the Crisis Continuum, and would permit it to adjust its risk management measures to address the unique circumstances of each event.

The Recovery Plan would describe the conditions that mark each phase of the Crisis Continuum, and would identify actions that DTC could take as it transitions through each phase in order to both prevent losses from materializing through active risk management, and to restore the financial health of DTC during a period of stress.

The stable market phase of the Crisis Continuum would describe active risk management activities in the normal course of business. These activities would include performing (1) backtests to evaluate the adequacy of the collateral level and the haircut sufficiency for covering market price volatility and (2) stress testing to cover market price moves under real historical and hypothetical scenarios to assess the haircut adequacy under extreme but plausible market conditions. The backtesting and stress testing results are escalated, as necessary, to internal and Board committees.²⁸

²⁸ DTC's stress testing practices are described in the Clearing Agency Stress Testing Framework (Market Risk). See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 80485 (April 19, 2017), 82 FR 19131 (April 25, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-005, SR-FICC-2017-009, SR-NSCC-2017-006).

The Recovery Plan would describe some of the indicators of the stress market phase of the Crisis Continuum, which would include, for example, volatility in market prices of certain assets where there is increased uncertainty among market participants about the fundamental value of those assets. This phase would involve general market stresses, when no Participant Default would be imminent. Within the description of this phase, the Recovery Plan would provide that DTC may take targeted, routine risk management measures as necessary and as permitted by the Rules.

Within the Participant Default phase of the Crisis Continuum, the Recovery Plan would provide a roadmap for the existing procedures that DTC would follow in the event of a Participant Default and any decision by DTC to cease to act for that Participant.²⁹ The Recovery Plan would provide that the objectives of DTC's actions upon a Participant Default are to (1) minimize losses and market exposure, and (2), to the extent practicable, minimize disturbances to the affected markets. The Recovery Plan would describe tools, actions, and related governance for both market risk monitoring and liquidity risk monitoring through this phase. For example, in connection with managing its market risk during this phase, DTC would, pursuant to its Rules and existing procedures, (1) monitor and assess the adequacy of its Participants Fund and Net Debit Caps; and (2) follow its operational procedures relating to the execution of a liquidation of the Defaulting Participant's Collateral securities through close collaboration and coordination across multiple functions. Management of liquidity risk through this phase would involve ongoing monitoring of, among other things, the adequacy of the Participants Fund and

²⁹ See Rule 10 (Discretionary Termination); Rule 11 (Mandatory Termination); Rule 12 (Insolvency), supra note 7.

risk controls, and the Recovery Plan would identify certain actions DTC may deploy as it deems necessary to mitigate a potential liquidity shortfall, which would include, for example, the reduction of Net Debit Caps of some or all Participants, or seeking additional liquidity resources. The Recovery Plan would state that, throughout this phase, relevant information would be escalated and reported to both internal management committees and the Board Risk Committee.

The Recovery Plan would also identify financial resources available to DTC, pursuant to the Rules, to address losses arising out of a Participant Default. Specifically, Rule 4, as proposed to be amended by the Loss Allocation Filing, would provide that losses remaining after application of the Defaulting Participant's resources be satisfied first by applying a "Corporate Contribution," and then, if necessary, by allocating remaining losses among the membership in accordance with such Rule 4, as amended.³⁰

In order to provide for an effective and timely recovery, the Recovery Plan would describe the period of time that would occur near the end of the Participant Default phase, during which DTC may experience stress events or observe early warning indicators that allow it to evaluate its options and prepare for the recovery phase (referred to in the Plan as the "Recovery Corridor"). The Recovery Plan would then describe the recovery phase of the Crisis Continuum, which would begin on the date that DTC issues the first Loss

³⁰ See supra note 12. The Loss Allocation Filing proposes to amend Rule 4 to define the amount DTC would contribute to address a loss resulting from either a Participant Default or a non-default event as the "Corporate Contribution." This amount would be 50 percent (50%) of the "General Business Risk Capital Requirement," which is calculated pursuant to the Capital Policy and is an amount sufficient to cover potential general business losses so that DTC can continue operations and services as a going concern if those losses materialize, in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15) under the Act. See also supra note 10; 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(15).

Allocation Notice of the second loss allocation round with respect to a given “Event Period.”³¹ The recovery phase would describe actions that DTC may take to avoid entering into a wind-down of its business.

DTC expects that significant deterioration of liquidity resources would cause it to enter the Recovery Corridor. As such, the Plan would describe the actions DTC may take aimed at replenishing those resources Recovery Corridor indicators may include, for example, a rapid and material increase in market prices or sequential or simultaneous failures of multiple Participants or Affiliated Families of Participants over a compressed time period. Throughout the Recovery Corridor, DTC would monitor the adequacy of its resources and the expected timing of replenishment of those resources, and would do so through the monitoring of certain corridor indicator metrics.

The majority of the corridor indicators, as identified in the Recovery Plan, relate directly to conditions that may require DTC to adjust its strategy for hedging and liquidating Collateral securities, and any such changes would include an assessment of the status of the corridor indicators. Corridor indicators would include, for example, effectiveness and speed of DTC’s efforts to liquidate Collateral securities, and an

³¹ The Loss Allocation Filing proposes to amend Rule 4 to introduce the concept of an “Event Period” as the ten (10) Business Days beginning on (i) with respect to a Participant Default, the day on which DTC notifies Participants that it has ceased to act for a Participant, or (ii) with respect to a non-default loss, the day that DTC notifies Participants of the determination by the Board of Directors that there is a non-default loss event, as described in greater detail in that filing. The proposed Rule 4 would define a “round” as a series of loss allocations relating to an Event Period, and would provide that the first Loss Allocation Notice in a first, second, or subsequent round shall expressly state that such notice reflects the beginning of a first, second, or subsequent round. The maximum allocable loss amount of a round is equal to the sum of the “Loss Allocation Caps” (as defined in the proposed Rule 4) of those Participants included in the round. See supra note 12.

impediment to the availability of its resources to repay any borrowings due to any Participant default. For each corridor indicator, the Recovery Plan would identify (1) measures of the indicator, (2) evaluations of the status of the indicator, (3) metrics for determining the status of the deterioration or improvement of the indicator, and (4) “Corridor Actions,” which are steps that may be taken to improve the status of the indicator,³² as well as management escalations required to authorize those steps. Because DTC has never experienced the default of multiple Participants, it has not, historically, measured the deterioration or improvements metrics of the corridor indicators. As such, these metrics were chosen based on the business judgment of DTC management.

The Recovery Plan would also describe the reporting and escalation of the status of the corridor indicators throughout the Recovery Corridor. Significant deterioration of a corridor indicator, as measured by the metrics set out in the Recovery Plan, would be escalated to the Board. DTC management would review the corridor indicators and the related metrics at least annually, and would modify these metrics as necessary in light of observations from simulations of Participant Defaults and other analyses. Any proposed modifications would be reviewed by the Management Risk Committee and the Board Risk Committee. The Recovery Plan would estimate that DTC may remain in the Recovery Corridor stage between one day and two weeks. This estimate is based on historical data observed in past Participant Default events, the results of simulations of Participant Defaults, and periodic liquidity analyses conducted by DTC. The actual

³² The Corridor Actions that would be identified in the Plan are indicative, but not prescriptive; therefore, if DTC needs to consider alternative actions due to the applicable facts and circumstances, the escalation of those alternative actions would follow the same escalation protocol identified in the Plan for the Corridor Indicator to which the action relates.

length of a Recovery Corridor would vary based on actual market conditions observed at the time, and DTC would expect the Recovery Corridor to be shorter in market conditions of increased stress.

The Recovery Plan would outline steps by which DTC may allocate its losses, which would occur when and in the order provided in Rule 4, as amended.³³ The Recovery Plan would also identify tools that may be used to address foreseeable shortfalls of DTC's liquidity resources following a Participant Default, and would provide that these tools may be used as appropriate during the Crisis Continuum to address liquidity shortfalls if they arise. The goal in managing DTC's liquidity resources is to maximize resource availability in an evolving stress situation, to maintain flexibility in the order and use of sources of liquidity, and to repay any third party lenders in a timely manner. Liquidity tools include, for example, DTC's committed 364-day credit facility³⁴ and Net Credit Reductions.³⁵ The Recovery Plan would state that the availability and capacity of these liquidity tools cannot be accurately predicted and are dependent on the circumstances of the applicable stress period, including market price

³³ As these matters are described in greater detail in the Loss Allocation Filing and in the proposed amendments to Rule 4, described therein, reference is made to that filing and the details are not repeated here. See supra note 12.

³⁴ See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 80605 (May 5, 2017), 82 FR 21850 (May 10, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-802; SR-NSCC-2017-802).

³⁵ DTC may borrow amounts needed to complete settlement from Participants by net credit reductions to their settlement accounts, secured by the Collateral of the defaulting Participant. See Securities Exchange Act Release Nos. 24689 (July 9, 1987), 52 FR 26613 (July 15, 1987) (SR-DTC-87-4); 41879 (September 15, 1999), 64 FR 51360 (September 22, 1999) (SR-DTC-99-15); 42281 (December 28, 1999), 65 FR 1420 (January 10, 2000) (SR-DTC-99-25).

volatility, actual or perceived disruptions in financial markets, the costs to DTC of utilizing these tools, and any potential impact on DTC's credit rating.

As stated above, the Recovery Plan would state that DTC will have entered the recovery phase on the date that it issues the first Loss Allocation Notice of the second loss allocation round with respect to a given Event Period. The Recovery Plan would provide that, during the recovery phase, DTC would continue and, as needed, enhance, the monitoring and remedial actions already described in connection with previous phases of the Crisis Continuum, and would remain in the recovery phase until its financial resources are expected to be or are fully replenished, or until the Wind-down Plan is triggered, as described below.

The Recovery Plan would describe governance for the actions and tools that may be employed within each phase of the Crisis Continuum, which would be dictated by the facts and circumstances applicable to the situation being addressed. Such facts and circumstances would be measured by the various indicators and metrics applicable to that phase of the Crisis Continuum, and would follow relevant escalation protocol that would be described in the Recovery Plan. The Recovery Plan would also describe the governance procedures around a decision to cease to act for a Participant, pursuant to the Rules, and around the management and oversight of the subsequent liquidation of Collateral securities. The Recovery Plan would state that, overall, DTC would retain flexibility in accordance with the Rules, its governance structure, and its regulatory oversight, to address a particular situation in order to best protect DTC and its Participants, and to meet the primary objectives, throughout the Crisis Continuum, of

minimizing losses and, where consistent and practicable, minimizing disturbance to affected markets.

Non-Default Losses. The Recovery Plan would outline how DTC may address losses that result from events other than a Participant Default. While these matters are addressed in greater detail in other documents, this section of the Plan would provide a roadmap to those documents and an outline for DTC’s approach to monitoring and managing losses that could result from a non-default event. The Plan would first identify some of the risks DTC faces that could lead to these losses, which include, for example, the business and profit/loss risks of unexpected declines in revenue or growth of expenses; the operational risks of disruptions to systems or processes that could lead to large losses, including those resulting from, for example, a cyber-attack; and custody or investment risks that could lead to financial losses. The Recovery Plan would describe DTC’s overall strategy for the management of these risks, which includes a “three lines of defense” approach to risk management that allows for comprehensive management of risk across the organization.³⁶ The Recovery Plan would also describe DTC’s approach

³⁶ This “three lines of defense” approach to risk management includes (1) a first line of defense comprised of the various business lines and functional units that support the products and services offered by DTC; (2) a second line of defense comprised of control functions that support DTC, including the risk management, legal and compliance areas; and (3) a third line of defense, which is performed by an internal audit group. The Clearing Agency Risk Management Framework includes a description of this “three lines of defense” approach to risk management, and addresses how DTC comprehensively manages various risks, including operational, general business, investment, custody, and other risks that arise in or are borne by it. See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 81635 (September 15, 2017), 82 FR 44224 (September 21, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-013; SR-FICC-2017-016; SR-NSCC-2017-012). The Clearing Agency Operational Risk Management Framework describes the manner in which DTC manages operational risks, as defined therein. See Securities Exchange Act Release No.

to financial risk and capital management. The Plan would identify key aspects of this approach, including, for example, an annual budget process, business line performance reviews with management, and regular review of capital requirements against LNA. These risk management strategies are collectively intended to allow DTC to effectively identify, monitor, and manage risks of non-default losses.

The Plan would identify the two categories of financial resources DTC maintains to cover losses and expenses arising from non-default risks or events as (1) LNA, maintained, monitored, and managed pursuant to the Capital Policy, which include (a) amounts held in satisfaction of the General Business Risk Capital Requirement,³⁷ (b) the Corporate Contribution,³⁸ and (c) other amounts held in excess of DTC's capital requirements pursuant to the Capital Policy; and (2) resources available pursuant to the loss allocation provisions of Rule 4.³⁹

The Plan would address the process by which the CFO and the DTCC Treasury group would determine which available LNA resources are most appropriate to cover a loss that is caused by a non-default event. This determination involves an evaluation of a number of factors, including the current and expected size of the loss, the expected time horizon over when the loss or additional expenses would materialize, the current and projected available LNA, and the likelihood LNA could be successfully replenished

81745 (September 28, 2017), 82 FR 46332 (October 4, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-014; SR-FICC-2017-017; SR-NSCC-2017-013).

³⁷ See supra note 30.

³⁸ See supra note 30.

³⁹ See supra note 12.

pursuant to the Replenishment Plan, if triggered.⁴⁰ Finally the Plan would discuss how DTC would apply its resources to address losses resulting from a non-default event, including the order of resources it would apply if the loss or liability is expected to exceed DTC's excess LNA amounts, or is large relative thereto, and the Board has declared the event a "Declared Non-Default Loss Event" pursuant to Rule 4.⁴¹

The Plan would also describe proposed Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure), which DTC is proposing to adopt in its Rules. This Proposed Rule would provide transparency around how DTC would address extraordinary events that may occur outside its control. Specifically, the Proposed Rule would define a "Market Disruption Event" and the governance around a determination that such an event has occurred. The Proposed Rule would also describe DTC's authority to take actions during the pendency of a Market Disruption Event that it deems appropriate to address such an event and facilitate the continuation of its services, if practicable, as described in greater detail below.

The Plan would describe the interaction between the Proposed Rule and DTC's existing processes and procedures addressing business continuity management and disaster recovery (generally, the "BCM/DR procedures"), making clear that the Proposed Rule is designed to support those BCM/DR procedures and to address circumstances that may be exogenous to DTC and not necessarily addressed by the BCM/DR procedures. Finally, the Plan would describe that, because the operation of the Proposed Rule is specific to each applicable Market Disruption Event, the Proposed Rule does not define a

⁴⁰ See supra note 10.

⁴¹ See supra note 12.

time limit on its application. However, the Plan would note that actions authorized by the Proposed Rule would be limited to the pendency of the applicable Market Disruption Event, as made clear in the Proposed Rule. Overall, the Proposed Rule is designed to mitigate risks caused by Market Disruption Events and, thereby, minimize the risk of financial loss that may result from such events.

Recovery Tool Characteristics. The Recovery Plan would describe DTC's evaluation of the tools identified within the Recovery Plan, and its rationale for concluding that such tools are comprehensive, effective, and transparent, and that such tools provide appropriate incentives to Participants and minimize negative impact on Participants and the financial system, in compliance with guidance published by the Commission in connection with the adoption of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act.⁴² DTC's analysis and the conclusions set forth in this section of the Recovery Plan are described in greater detail in Item 3(b) of this filing, below.

DTC Wind-down Plan

The Wind-down Plan would provide the framework and strategy for the orderly wind-down of DTC if the use of the recovery tools described in the Recovery Plan do not successfully return DTC to financial viability. While DTC believes that, given the comprehensive nature of the recovery tools, such event is extremely unlikely, as described in greater detail below, DTC is proposing a wind-down strategy that provides for (1) the transfer of DTC's business, assets, securities inventory, and membership to another legal entity, (2) such transfer being effected in connection with proceedings

⁴² Standards for Covered Clearing Agencies, Securities Exchange Act Release No. 78961 (September 28, 2016), 81 FR 70786 (October 13, 2016) (S7-03-14).

under Chapter 11 of the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code,⁴³ and (3) after effectuating this transfer, DTC liquidating any remaining assets in an orderly manner in bankruptcy proceedings. DTC believes that the proposed transfer approach to a wind-down would meet its objectives of (1) assuring that DTC's critical services will be available to the market as long as there are Participants in good standing, and (2) minimizing disruption to the operations of Participants and financial markets generally that might be caused by DTC's failure.

In describing the transfer approach to DTC's Wind-down Plan, the Plan would identify the factors that DTC considered in developing this approach, including the fact that DTC does not own material assets that are unrelated to its clearance and settlement activities. As such, a business reorganization or "bail-in" of debt approach would be unlikely to mitigate significant losses. Additionally, DTC's approach was developed in consideration of its critical and unique position in the U.S. markets, which precludes any approach that would cause DTC's critical services to no longer be available.

First, the Wind-down Plan would describe the potential scenarios that could lead to the wind-down of DTC, and the likelihood of such scenarios. The Wind-down Plan would identify the time period leading up to a decision to wind-down DTC as the "Runway Period." This period would follow the implementation of any recovery tools, as it may take a period of time, depending on the severity of the market stress at that time, for these tools to be effective or for DTC to realize a loss sufficient to cause it to be

⁴³ 11 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.

unable to borrow to complete settlement and to repay such borrowings.⁴⁴ The Plan would identify some of the indicators that DTC has entered this Runway Period, which would include, for example, simultaneous successive Participant Defaults, significant Participant retirements, and DTC's inability to replenish financial resources following the liquidation of Collateral securities.

The trigger for implementing the Wind-down Plan would be a determination by the Board that recovery efforts have not been, or are unlikely to be, successful in returning DTC to viability as a going concern. As described in the Plan, DTC believes this is an appropriate trigger because it is both broad and flexible enough to cover a variety of scenarios, and would align incentives of DTC and Participants to avoid actions that might undermine DTC's recovery efforts. Additionally, this approach takes into account the characteristics of DTC's recovery tools and enables the Board to consider (1) the presence of indicators of a successful or unsuccessful recovery, and (2) potential for knock-on effects of continued iterative application of DTC's recovery tools.

The Wind-down Plan would describe the general objectives of the transfer strategy, and would address assumptions regarding the transfer of DTC's critical services, business, assets, securities inventory, and membership⁴⁵ to another legal entity that is

⁴⁴ The Wind-down Plan would state that, given DTC's position as a user-governed financial market utility, it is possible that its Participants might voluntarily elect to provide additional support during the recovery phase leading up to a potential trigger of the Wind-down Plan, but would also make clear that DTC cannot predict the willingness of Participants to do so.

⁴⁵ Arrangements with FAST Agents and DRS Agents (each as defined in proposed Rule 32(A)) and with Settling Banks would also be assigned to the Transferee, so that the approach would be transparent to issuers and their transfer agents, as well as to Settling Banks.

legally, financially, and operationally able to provide DTC's critical services to entities that wish to continue their membership following the transfer ("Transferee"). The Wind-down Plan would provide that the Transferee would be either (1) a third party legal entity, which may be an existing or newly established legal entity or a bridge entity formed to operate the business on an interim basis to enable the business to be transferred subsequently ("Third Party Transferee"); or (2) an existing, debt-free failover legal entity established ex-ante by DTCC ("Failover Transferee") to be used as an alternative Transferee in the event that no viable or preferable Third Party Transferee timely commits to acquire DTC's business. DTC would seek to identify the proposed Transferee, and negotiate and enter into transfer arrangements during the Runway Period and prior to making any filings under Chapter 11 of the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code.⁴⁶ As stated above, the Wind-down Plan would anticipate that the transfer to the Transferee, including the transfer and establishment of the Participant and Pledgee securities accounts on the books of the Transferee, be effected in connection with proceedings under Chapter 11 of the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code, and pursuant to a bankruptcy court order under Section 363 of the Bankruptcy Code, such that the transfer would be free and clear of claims against, and interests in, DTC, except to the extent expressly provided in the court's order.⁴⁷

In order to effect a timely transfer of its services and minimize the market and operational disruption of such transfer, DTC would expect to transfer all of its critical services and any non-critical services that are ancillary and beneficial to a critical service,

⁴⁶ 11 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.

⁴⁷ See id. at 363.

or that otherwise have substantial user demand from the continuing membership. Given the transfer of the securities inventory and the establishment on the books of the Transferee Participant and Pledgee securities accounts, DTC anticipates that, following the transfer, it would not itself continue to provide any services, critical or not. Following the transfer, the Wind-down Plan would anticipate that the Transferee and its continuing membership would determine whether to continue to provide any transferred non-critical service on an ongoing basis, or terminate the non-critical service following some transition period. DTC's Wind-down Plan would anticipate that the Transferee would enter into a transition services agreement with DTCC so that DTCC would continue to provide the shared services it currently provides to DTC, including staffing, infrastructure and operational support. The Wind-down Plan would also anticipate the assignment of DTC's "inbound" link arrangements to the Transferee. The Wind-down Plan would provide that in the case of "outbound" links, DTC would seek to have the linked FMIs agree, at a minimum, to accept the Transferee as a link party for a transition period.⁴⁸

The Wind-down Plan would provide that, following the effectiveness of the transfer to the Transferee, the wind-down of DTC would involve addressing any residual claims against DTC through the bankruptcy process and liquidating the legal entity. As

⁴⁸ The proposed transfer arrangements outlined in the Wind-down Plan do not contemplate the transfer of any credit or funding agreements, which are generally not assignable by DTC. However, to the extent the Transferee adopts rules substantially identical to those DTC has in effect prior to the transfer, it would have the benefit of any rules-based liquidity funding. The Wind-down Plan contemplates that no Participants Fund would be transferred to the Transferee, as it is not held in a bankruptcy remote manner and it is the primary prefunded liquidity resource to be accessed in the recovery phase.

such, and as stated above, the Wind-down Plan does not contemplate DTC continuing to provide services in any capacity following the transfer time, and any services not transferred would be terminated.

The Wind-down Plan would also identify the key dependencies for the effectiveness of the transfer, which include regulatory approvals that would permit the Transferee to be legally qualified to provide the transferred services from and after the transfer, and approval by the applicable bankruptcy court of, among other things, the proposed sale, assignments, and transfers to the Transferee.

The Wind-down Plan would address governance matters related to the execution of the transfer of DTC's business and its wind-down. The Wind-down Plan would address the duties of the Board to execute the wind-down of DTC in conformity with (1) the Rules, (2) the Board's fiduciary duties, which mandate that it exercise reasonable business judgment in performing these duties, and (3) DTC's regulatory obligations under the Act as a registered clearing agency. The Wind-down Plan would also identify certain factors the Board may consider in making these decisions, which would include, for example, whether DTC could safely stabilize the business and protect its value without seeking bankruptcy protection, and DTC's ability to continue to meet its regulatory requirements.

The Wind-down Plan would describe (1) actions DTC or DTCC may take to prepare for wind-down in the period before DTC experiences any financial distress, (2) actions DTC would take both during the recovery phase and the Runway Period to prepare for the execution of the Wind-down Plan, and (3) actions DTC would take upon commencement of bankruptcy proceedings to effectuate the Wind-down Plan.

Finally, the Wind-down Plan would include an analysis of the estimated time and costs to effectuate the plan, and would provide that this estimate be reviewed and approved by the Board annually. In order to estimate the length of time it might take to achieve a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC's critical operations, as contemplated by the R&W Plan, the Wind-down Plan would include an analysis of the possible sequencing and length of time it might take to complete an orderly wind-down and transfer of critical operations, as described in earlier sections of the R&W Plan. The Wind-down Plan would also include in this analysis consideration of other factors, including the time it might take to complete any further attempts at recovery under the Recovery Plan. The Wind-down Plan would then multiply this estimated length of time by DTC's average monthly operating expenses, including adjustments to account for changes to DTC's profit and expense profile during these circumstances, over the previous twelve months to determine the amount of LNA that it should hold to achieve a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC's critical operations. The estimated wind-down costs would constitute the "Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement" under the Capital Policy.⁴⁹ Under that policy, the General Business Risk Capital Requirement is calculated as the greatest of three estimated amounts, one of which is this Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement.⁵⁰

The R&W Plan is designed as a roadmap, and the types of actions that may be taken both leading up to and in connection with implementation of the Wind-down Plan would be primarily addressed in other supporting documentation referred to therein.

⁴⁹ See supra note 10.

⁵⁰ See supra note 10.

The Wind-down Plan would address proposed Rule 32(A) (Wind-down of the Corporation and proposed Rule 38 (Force Majeure and Market Disruption)), which would be adopted to facilitate the implementation of the Wind-down Plan, as discussed below.

Proposed Rules

In connection with the adoption of the R&W Plan, DTC is proposing to adopt the Proposed Rules, each described below. The Proposed Rules would facilitate the execution of the R&W Plan and would provide Participants with transparency as to critical aspects of the Plan, particularly as they relate to the rights and responsibilities of both DTC and its Participants. The Proposed Rules also provide a legal basis to these aspects of the Plan.

Rule 32(A) (Wind-down of the Corporation)

The proposed Rule 32(A) (“Wind-down Rule”) would be adopted to facilitate the execution of the Wind-down Plan. The Wind-down Rule would include a proposed set of defined terms that would be applicable only to the provisions of this Proposed Rule. The Wind-down Rule would make clear that a wind-down of DTC’s business would occur (1) after a decision is made by the Board, and (2) in connection with the transfer of DTC’s services to a Transferee, as described therein. Generally, the proposed Wind-down Rule is designed to create clear mechanisms for the transfer of Eligible Participants and Pledgees, Settling Banks, DRS Agents, and FAST Agents (as these terms would be defined in the Wind-down Rule), and DTC’s inventory of financial assets in order to provide for continued access to critical services and to minimize disruption to the markets in the event the Wind-down Plan is initiated.

Wind-down Trigger. First, the Proposed Rule would make clear that the Board is responsible for initiating the Wind-down Plan, and would identify the criteria the Board would consider when making this determination. As provided for in the Wind-down Plan and in the proposed Wind-down Rule, the Board would initiate the Plan if, in the exercise of its business judgment and subject to its fiduciary duties, it has determined that the execution of the Recovery Plan has not or is not likely to restore DTC to viability as a going concern, and the implementation of the Wind-down Plan, including the transfer of DTC's business, is in the best interests of DTC, its Participants and Pledges, its shareholders and creditors, and the U.S. financial markets.

Identification of Critical Services; Designation of Dates and Times for Specific Actions. The Proposed Rule would provide that, upon making a determination to initiate the Wind-down Plan, the Board would identify the critical and non-critical services that would be transferred to the Transferee at the Transfer Time (as defined below and in the Proposed Rule), as well as any non-critical services that would not be transferred to the Transferee. The proposed Wind-down Rule would establish that any services transferred to the Transferee will only be provided by the Transferee as of the Transfer Time, and that any non-critical services that are not transferred to the Transferee would be terminated at the Transfer Time. The Proposed Rule would also provide that the Board would establish (1) an effective time for the transfer of DTC's business to a Transferee ("Transfer Time"), and (2) the last day that instructions in respect of securities and other financial products may be effectuated through the facilities of DTC (the "Last Activity Date"). The Proposed Rule would make clear that DTC would not accept any transactions for settlement after the Last Activity Date. Any transactions to be settled

after the Transfer Time would be required to be submitted to the Transferee, and would not be DTC's responsibility.

Notice Provisions. The proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that, upon a decision to implement the Wind-down Plan, DTC would provide its Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, Settling Banks and regulators with a notice that includes material information relating to the Wind-down Plan and the anticipated transfer of DTC's Participants and business, including, for example, (1) a brief statement of the reasons for the decision to implement the Wind-down Plan; (2) identification of the Transferee and information regarding the transaction by which the transfer of DTC's business would be effected; (3) the Transfer Time and Last Activity Date; and (4) identification of Participants and the critical and non-critical services that would be transferred to the Transferee at the Transfer Time, as well as those Non-Eligible Participants (as defined below and in the Proposed Rule) and any non-critical services that would not be included in the transfer. DTC would also make available the rules and procedures and membership agreements of the Transferee.

Transfer of Membership. The proposed Wind-down Rule would address the expected transfer of DTC's membership to the Transferee, which DTC would seek to effectuate by entering into an arrangement with a Failover Transferee, or by using commercially reasonable efforts to enter into such an arrangement with a Third Party Transferee. Thus, under the proposal, in connection with the implementation of the Wind-down Plan and with no further action required by any party:

(1) each Eligible Participant would become (i) a Participant of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Participants agreement with the Transferee;

(2) each Participant that is delinquent in the performance of any obligation to DTC or that has provided notice of its election to withdraw as a Participant (a “Non-Eligible Participant”) as of the Transfer Time would become (i) the holder of a transition period securities account maintained by the Transferee on its books (“Transition Period Securities Account”) and (ii) a party to a Transition Period Securities Account agreement of the Transferee;

(3) each Pledgee would become (i) a Pledgee of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Pledgee agreement with the Transferee;

(4) each DRS Agent would become (i) a DRS Agent of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a DRS Agent agreement with the Transferee;

(5) each FAST Agent would become (i) a FAST Agent of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a FAST Agent agreement with the Transferee; and

(6) each Settling Bank for Participants and Pledgees would become (i) a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledgees of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Settling Bank Agreement with the Transferee.

Further, the Proposed Rule would make clear that it would not prohibit (1) Non-Eligible Participants from applying for membership with the Transferee, (2) Non-Eligible Participants that have become holders of Transition Period Securities Accounts (“Transition Period Securities Account Holders”) of the Transferee from withdrawing as a Transition Period Securities Account Holder from the Transferee, subject to the rules and procedures of the Transferee, and (3) Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, and Settling Banks that would be transferred to the Transferee from withdrawing from membership with the Transferee, subject to the rules and procedures of the

Transferee. Under the Proposed Rule, Non-Eligible Participants that have become Transition Period Securities Account Holders of the Transferee shall have the rights and be subject to the obligations of Transition Period Securities Account Holders set forth in special provisions of the rules and procedures of the Transferee applicable to such Transition Period Securities Account Holder. Specifically, Non-Eligible Participants that become Transition Period Securities Account Holders must, within the Transition Period (as defined in the Proposed Rule), instruct the Transferee to transfer the financial assets credited to its Transition Period Securities Account (i) to a Participant of the Transferee through the facilities of the Transferee or (ii) to a recipient outside the facilities of the Transferee, and no additional financial assets may be delivered versus payment to a Transition Period Securities Account during the Transition Period.

Transfer of Inventory of Financial Assets. The proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that DTC would enter into arrangements with a Failover Transferee, or would use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Third Party Transferee, providing that, in either case, at Transfer Time:

(1) DTC would transfer to the Transferee (i) its rights with respect to its nominee Cede & Co. (“Cede”) (and thereby its rights with respect to the financial assets owned of record by Cede), (ii) the financial assets held by it at the FRBNY, (iii) the financial assets held by it at other CSDs, (iv) the financial assets held in custody for it with FAST Agents, (v) the financial assets held in custody for it with other custodians and (vi) the financial assets it holds in physical custody.

(2) The Transferee would establish security entitlements on its books for Eligible Participants of DTC that become Participants of the Transferee that replicate the

security entitlements that DTC maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time for such Eligible Participants, and DTC would simultaneously eliminate such security entitlements from its books.

(3) The Transferee would establish security entitlements on its books for Non-Eligible Participants of DTC that become Transition Period Securities Account Holders of the Transferee that replicate the security entitlements that DTC maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time for such Non-Eligible Participants, and DTC would simultaneously eliminate such security entitlements from its books.

(4) The Transferee would establish pledges on its books in favor of Pledges that become Pledges of the Transferee that replicate the pledges that DTC maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time in favor of such Pledges, and DTC shall simultaneously eliminate such pledges from its books.

Comparability Period. The proposed automatic mechanism for the transfer of DTC's membership is intended to provide DTC's membership with continuous access to critical services in the event of DTC's wind-down, and to facilitate the continued prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions. Further to this goal, the proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that DTC would enter into arrangements with a Failover Transferee, or would use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Third Party Transferee, providing that, in either case, with respect to the critical services and any non-critical services that are transferred from DTC to the Transferee, for at least a period of time to be agreed upon ("Comparability Period"), the business transferred from DTC to the Transferee would be operated in a manner that is comparable to the manner in which the business was previously operated by DTC.

Specifically, the proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that: (1) the rules of the Transferee and terms of Participant, Pledgee, DRS Agent, FAST Agent and Settling Bank agreements would be comparable in substance and effect to the analogous Rules and agreements of DTC, (2) the rights and obligations of any Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, and Settling Banks that are transferred to the Transferee would be comparable in substance and effect to their rights and obligations as to DTC, and (3) the Transferee would operate the transferred business and provide any services that are transferred in a comparable manner to which such services were provided by DTC.

The purpose of these provisions and the intended effect of the proposed Wind-down Rule is to facilitate a smooth transition of DTC's business to a Transferee and to provide that, for at least the Comparability Period, the Transferee (1) would operate the transferred business in a manner that is comparable in substance and effect to the manner in which the business was operated by DTC, and (2) would not require sudden and disruptive changes in the systems, operations and business practices of the new Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, and Settling Banks of the Transferee.

Subordination of Claims Provisions and Miscellaneous Matters. The proposed Wind-down Rule would also include a provision addressing the subordination of unsecured claims against DTC of its Participants who fail to participate in DTC's recovery efforts (*i.e.*, such firms are delinquent in their obligations to DTC or elect to retire from DTC in order to minimize their obligations with respect to the allocation of

losses, pursuant to the Rules). This provision is designed to incentivize Participants to participate in DTC's recovery efforts.⁵¹

The proposed Wind-down Rule would address other ex-ante matters, including provisions providing that its Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks (1) will assist and cooperate with DTC to effectuate the transfer of DTC's business to a Transferee, (2) consent to the provisions of the rule, and (3) grant DTC power of attorney to execute and deliver on their behalf documents and instruments that may be requested by the Transferee. Finally, the Proposed Rule would include a limitation of liability for any actions taken or omitted to be taken by DTC pursuant to the Proposed Rule. The purpose of the limitation of liability is to facilitate and protect DTC's ability to act expeditiously in response to extraordinary events. As noted, such limitation of liability would be available only following triggering of the Wind-down Plan. In addition, and as a separate matter, the limitation of liability provides Participants with transparency for the unlikely situation when those extraordinary events could occur, as well supporting the legal framework within which DTC would take such actions. These provisions, collectively, are designed to enable DTC to take such acts as the Board determines necessary to effectuate an orderly transfer and wind-down of its business should recovery efforts prove unsuccessful.

⁵¹ Nothing in the proposed Wind-down Rule would seek to prevent a Participant that retired its membership at DTC from applying for membership with the Transferee. Once its DTC membership is terminated, however, such firm would not be able to benefit from the membership assignment that would be effected by this proposed Wind-down Rule, and it would have to apply for membership directly with the Transferee, subject to its membership application and review process.

Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure)

The proposed Rule 38 (“Force Majeure Rule”) would address DTC’s authority to take certain actions upon the occurrence, and during the pendency, of a “Market Disruption Event,” as defined therein. The Proposed Rule is designed to clarify DTC’s ability to take actions to address extraordinary events outside of the control of DTC and of its membership, and to mitigate the effect of such events by facilitating the continuity of services (or, if deemed necessary, the temporary suspension of services). To that end, under the proposed Force Majeure Rule, DTC would be entitled, during the pendency of a Market Disruption Event, to (1) suspend the provision of any or all services, and (2) take, or refrain from taking, or require its Participants and Pledges to take, or refrain from taking, any actions it considers appropriate to address, alleviate, or mitigate the event and facilitate the continuation of DTC’s services as may be practicable.

The proposed Force Majeure Rule would identify the events or circumstances that would be considered a “Market Disruption Event,” including, for example, events that lead to the suspension or limitation of trading or banking in the markets in which DTC operates, or the unavailability or failure of any material payment, bank transfer, wire or securities settlement systems. The proposed Force Majeure Rule would define the governance procedures for how DTC would determine whether, and how, to implement the provisions of the rule. A determination that a Market Disruption Event has occurred would generally be made by the Board, but the Proposed Rule would provide for limited, interim delegation of authority to a specified officer or management committee if the Board would not be able to take timely action. In the event such delegated authority is exercised, the proposed Force Majeure Rule would require that the Board be convened as

promptly as practicable, no later than five Business Days after such determination has been made, to ratify, modify, or rescind the action. The proposed Force Majeure Rule would also provide for prompt notification to the Commission, and advance consultation with Commission staff, when practicable, including notification when an event is no longer continuing and the relevant actions are terminated. The Proposed Rule would require Participants and Pledges to notify DTC immediately upon becoming aware of a Market Disruption Event, and, likewise, would require DTC to notify its Participants and Pledges if it has triggered the Proposed Rule and of actions taken or intended to be taken thereunder.

Finally, the Proposed Rule would address other related matters, including a limitation of liability for any failure or delay in performance, in whole or in part, arising out of the Market Disruption Event. The purpose of the limitation of liability would be similar to the purpose of the analogous provision in the proposed Wind-down Rule, which is to facilitate and protect DTC's ability to act expeditiously in response to extraordinary events.

(a) Statutory Basis

DTC believes that the proposal is consistent with the requirements of the Act and the rules and regulations thereunder applicable to a registered clearing agency. In particular, DTC believes that the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with Section 17A(b)(3)(F) of the Act,⁵² the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act,⁵³ and the R&W

⁵² 15 U.S.C. 78q-1(b)(3)(F).

⁵³ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

Plan is consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii) under the Act,⁵⁴ for the reasons described below.

Section 17A(b)(3)(F) of the Act requires, in part, that the rules of DTC be designed to promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions, and to assure the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible.⁵⁵ The Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule would promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions by providing DTC with a roadmap for actions it may employ to mitigate losses, and monitor and, as needed, stabilize, its financial condition, which would allow it to continue its critical clearance and settlement services in stress situations. Further, as described above, the Recovery Plan is designed to identify the actions and tools DTC may use to address and minimize losses to both DTC and its Participants. The Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule would provide DTC's management and the Board with guidance in this regard by identifying the indicators and governance around the use and application of such tools to enable them to address stress situations in a manner most appropriate for the circumstances. Therefore, the Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule would also contribute to the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible by enabling actions that would address and minimize losses.

The Wind-down Plan and the proposed Wind-down Rule, which would facilitate the implementation of the Wind-down Plan, would also promote the prompt and accurate

⁵⁴ Id. at 240.17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii).

⁵⁵ 15 U.S.C. 78q-1(b)(3)(F).

clearance and settlement of securities transactions and assure the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible. The Wind-down Plan and the proposed Wind-down Rule would collectively establish a framework for the transfer and orderly wind-down of DTC's business. These proposals would establish clear mechanisms for the transfer of DTC's critical services and membership as well as clear provision for the transfer of the securities inventory it holds in fungible bulk for Participants. By doing so, the Wind-down Plan and these Proposed Rules are designed to facilitate the continuity of DTC's critical services and enable its Participants and Pledges to maintain access to DTC's services through the transfer of its membership in the event DTC defaults or the Wind-down Plan is triggered by the Board. Therefore, by facilitating the continuity of DTC's critical clearance and settlement services, DTC believes the proposals would promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions. Further, by creating a framework for the transfer and orderly wind-down of DTC's business, DTC believes the proposals would enhance the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible.

Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with the requirements of Section 17A(b)(3)(F) of the Act.⁵⁶

Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act requires DTC to establish, implement, maintain and enforce written policies and procedures reasonably designed to maintain a sound risk management framework for comprehensively managing legal, credit, liquidity, operational, general business, investment, custody, and other risks that arise in or are

⁵⁶ Id.

borne by the covered clearing agency, which includes plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of the covered clearing agency necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses.⁵⁷ The R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are designed to meet the requirements of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

The R&W Plan would be maintained by DTC in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) in that it provides plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of DTC necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses, as described above.⁵⁸ Specifically, the Recovery Plan would define the risk management activities, stress conditions and indicators, and tools that DTC may use to address stress scenarios that could eventually prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. Through the framework of the Crisis Continuum, the Recovery Plan would address measures that DTC may take to address risks of credit losses and liquidity shortfalls, and other losses that could arise from a Participant Default. The Recovery Plan would also address the management of general business risks and other non-default risks that could lead to losses.

The Wind-down Plan would be triggered by a determination by the Board that recovery efforts have not been, or are unlikely to be, successful in returning DTC to viability as a going concern. Once triggered, the Wind-down Plan would set forth clear mechanisms for the transfer of DTC's membership and business, and would be designed to facilitate continued access to DTC's critical services and to minimize market impact of

⁵⁷ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

⁵⁸ Id.

the transfer. By establishing the framework and strategy for the execution of the transfer and wind-down of DTC in order to facilitate continuous access to DTC's critical services, the Wind-down Plan establishes a plan for the orderly wind-down of DTC. Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan would provide plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of the covered clearing agency necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses, and, as such, meets the requirements of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁵⁹

As described in greater detail above, the Proposed Rules are designed to facilitate the execution of the R&W Plan, provide Participants with transparency regarding the material provisions of the Plan, and provide DTC with a legal basis for implementation of those provisions. As such, DTC also believes the Proposed Rules meet the requirements of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁶⁰

DTC has evaluated the recovery tools that would be identified in the Recovery Plan and has determined that these tools are comprehensive, effective, and transparent, and that such tools provide appropriate incentives to DTC's Participants to manage the risks they present. The recovery tools, as outlined in the Recovery Plan and in the proposed Force Majeure Rule, provide DTC with a comprehensive set of options to address its material risks and support the resiliency of its critical services under a range of stress scenarios. DTC also believes the recovery tools are effective, as DTC has both legal basis and operational capability to execute these tools in a timely and reliable manner. Many of the recovery tools are provided for in the Rules; Participants are bound

⁵⁹ Id.

⁶⁰ Id.

by the Rules through their Participants Agreements with DTC, and the Rules are adopted pursuant to a framework established by Rule 19b-4 under the Act,⁶¹ providing a legal basis for the recovery tools found therein. Other recovery tools have legal basis in contractual arrangements to which DTC is a party, as described above. Further, as many of the tools are embedded in DTC's ongoing risk management practices or are embedded into its predefined default-management procedures, DTC is able to execute these tools, in most cases, when needed and without material operational or organizational delay.

The majority of the recovery tools are also transparent, as they are or are proposed to be included in the Rules, which are publicly available. DTC believes the recovery tools also provide appropriate incentives to its owners and Participants, as they are designed to control the amount of risk they present to DTC's clearance and settlement system. Finally, DTC's Recovery Plan provides for a continuous evaluation of the systemic consequences of executing its recovery tools, with the goal of minimizing their negative impact. The Recovery Plan would outline various indicators over a timeline of increasing stress, the Crisis Continuum, with escalation triggers to DTC management or the Board, as appropriate. This approach would allow for timely evaluation of the situation and the possible impacts of the use of a recovery tool in order to minimize the negative effects of the stress scenario. Therefore, DTC believes that the recovery tools that would be identified and described in its Recovery Plan, including the authority provided to it in the proposed Force Majeure Rule, would meet the criteria identified

⁶¹ Id. at 240.19b-4.

within guidance published by the Commission in connection with the adoption of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁶²

Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁶³

Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii) under the Act requires DTC to establish, implement, maintain and enforce written policies and procedures reasonably designed to identify, monitor, and manage its general business risk and hold sufficient LNA to cover potential general business losses so that DTC can continue operations and services as a going concern if those losses materialize, including by holding LNA equal to the greater of either (x) six months of the covered clearing agency's current operating expenses, or (y) the amount determined by the board of directors to be sufficient to ensure a recovery or orderly wind-down of critical operations and services of the covered clearing agency.⁶⁴

While the Capital Policy addresses how DTC holds LNA in compliance with these requirements, the Wind-down Plan would include an analysis that would estimate the amount of time and the costs to achieve a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC's critical operations and services, and would provide that the Board review and approve this analysis and estimation annually. The Wind-down Plan would also provide that the estimate would be the "Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement" under the Capital Policy. Under that policy, the General Business Risk Capital Requirement, which is the sufficient amount of LNA that DTC should hold to cover potential general business

⁶² Supra note 42.

⁶³ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

⁶⁴ Id. at 240.17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii).

losses so that it can continue operations and services as a going concern if those losses materialize, is calculated as the greatest of three estimated amounts, one of which is this Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement. Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan, as it interrelates with the Capital Policy, is consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii).⁶⁵

(B) Clearing Agency's Statement on Burden on Competition

DTC does not believe the proposal would have any impact, or impose any burden, on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purpose of the Act.⁶⁶

The proposal would apply uniformly to all Participants and Pledges. DTC does not anticipate that the proposal would affect its day-to-day operations under normal circumstances, or in the management of a typical Participant default scenario or non-default event. DTC is not proposing to alter the standards or requirements for becoming or remaining a Participant or Pledgee, or otherwise using its services. DTC also does not propose to change its methodology for calculation of Participants Fund contributions.

The proposal is intended to (1) address the risk of loss events and identify the tools and resources available to it to withstand and recover from such events, so that it can restore normal operations, and (2) provide a framework for its orderly wind-down and the transfer of its business in the event those recovery tools do not restore DTC to financial viability, as described herein.

The R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules have been developed and documented in order to satisfy applicable regulatory requirements, as discussed above.

⁶⁵ Id.

⁶⁶ 15 U.S.C. 78q-1(b)(3)(I).

With respect to the Recovery Plan, the proposal generally reflects DTC's existing tools and existing internal procedures. Existing tools that would have a direct impact on the rights, responsibilities or obligations of Participants are reflected in the existing Rules or are proposed to be included in the Rules. Accordingly, the Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule are intended to provide a roadmap, define the strategy and identify the tools available to DTC in connection with its recovery efforts. By proposing to enhance DTC's existing internal management and its regulatory compliance related to its recovery efforts, DTC does not believe the Recovery Plan or the proposed Force Majeure Rule would have any impact, or impose any burden, on competition.

With respect to the Wind-down Plan and the proposed Wind-down Rule, which facilitate the execution of the Wind-down Plan, the proposal would operate to effect the transfer of all eligible Participants and Pledges to the Transferee, and would not prohibit any market participant from either bidding to become the Transferee or from applying for membership with the Transferee. The proposal also would not prohibit any Participant or Pledgee from withdrawing from DTC prior to the Transfer Time, as is permitted under the Rules today, or from applying for membership with the Transferee. Therefore, as the proposal would treat each similarly situated Participant and Pledgee identically under the Wind-down Plan and under the Proposed Wind-down Rule, DTC does not believe the Wind-down Plan or the proposed Wind-down Rule would have any impact, or impose any burden, on competition.

(C) Clearing Agency's Statement on Comments on the Proposed Rule Change Received from Members, Participants, or Others

While DTC has not solicited or received any written comments relating to this proposal, DTC has conducted outreach to its Members in order to provide them with

notice of the proposal. DTC will notify the Commission of any written comments received by DTC.

III. Date of Effectiveness of the Proposed Rule Change, and Timing for Commission Action

Within 45 days of the date of publication of this notice in the Federal Register or within such longer period up to 90 days (i) as the Commission may designate if it finds such longer period to be appropriate and publishes its reasons for so finding or (ii) as to which the clearing agency consents, the Commission will:

- (A) by order approve or disapprove such proposed rule change, or
- (B) institute proceedings to determine whether the proposed rule change should be disapproved.

The proposal shall not take effect until all regulatory actions required with respect to the proposal are completed.

IV. Solicitation of Comments

Interested persons are invited to submit written data, views and arguments concerning the foregoing, including whether the Proposed Rule Change is consistent with the Act. Comments may be submitted by any of the following methods:

Electronic Comments:

- Use the Commission's Internet comment form (<http://www.sec.gov/rules/sro.shtml>); or
- Send an e-mail to rule-comments@sec.gov. Please include File Number SR-DTC-2017-021 on the subject line.

Paper Comments:

- Send paper comments in triplicate to Secretary, Securities and Exchange Commission, 100 F Street, NE, Washington, DC 20549.

All submissions should refer to File Number SR-DTC-2017-021. This file number should be included on the subject line if e-mail is used. To help the Commission process and review your comments more efficiently, please use only one method. The Commission will post all comments on the Commission's Internet website (<http://www.sec.gov/rules/sro.shtml>). Copies of the submission, all subsequent amendments, all written statements with respect to the Proposed Rule Change that are filed with the Commission, and all written communications relating to the Proposed Rule Change between the Commission and any person, other than those that may be withheld from the public in accordance with the provisions of 5 U.S.C. 552, will be available for website viewing and printing in the Commission's Public Reference Room, 100 F Street, NE, Washington, DC 20549 on official business days between the hours of 10:00 a.m. and 3:00 p.m. Copies of the filing also will be available for inspection and copying at the principal office of DTC and on DTCC's website (<http://dtcc.com/legal/sec-rule-filings.aspx>). All comments received will be posted without change. Persons submitting comments are cautioned that we do not redact or edit personal identifying information from comment submissions. You should submit only information that you wish to make available publicly. All submissions should refer to File Number SR-DTC-2017-021 and should be submitted on or before [insert date 21 days from publication in the Federal Register].

For the Commission, by the Division of Trading and Markets, pursuant to delegated authority.⁶⁷

Secretary

⁶⁷ 17 CFR 200.30-3(a)(12).

**SR-DTC-2017-021 Amendment No. 1
EXHIBIT 4**

PAGE REDACTED IN ITS ENTIRETY

Bold and underlined text indicates proposed added language
~~Bold and strikethrough text~~ indicates proposed deleted language

RULE 32(A)

WIND-DOWN OF THE CORPORATION

Section 1. Defined Terms

(a) For purposes of this Rule 32(A):

“Bridge Entity” has the meaning given to such term in the definition of “Transferee” in this Section 1(a).

“Business” means the Critical Services and any Non-Critical Services of the Corporation included in a Transfer.

“Cede” means Cede & Co., a New York general partnership that is the record owner of the financial assets held by the Corporation in fungible bulk for Participants of the Corporation.

“Comparability Period” means a period of time following the Transfer, to be agreed between the Corporation and a Transferee, during which the Business transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee shall be operated by the Transferee in a manner comparable to the manner in which the Business was previously operated by the Corporation, as more specifically set forth in Section 9 of this Rule 32(A).

“Critical Services” means the services of the Corporation described in the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation that have been identified as critical services in the Recovery and Wind-down Plan.

“Delinquent Participant” means a Participant of the Corporation that is delinquent in the performance of any of its obligations to the Corporation (as determined by the Corporation).

“DRS Agent” means a transfer agent that participates in the direct registration service of the Corporation or a transfer agent that participates in the direct registration service of the Transferee, as the context requires.

“DRS Agent Agreement” means the form of agreement between a DRS Agent and the Corporation or between a DRS Agent and the Transferee, as the context requires, providing, *inter alia*, for the DRS Agent to be bound by

the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation or the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, as applicable to such DRS Agent.

“DTCC” means The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation.

“Eligible Participant” means a Participant of the Corporation other than a Non-Eligible Participant.

“Failover Entity” has the meaning given to such term in the definition of “Transferee” in this Section 1(a).

“FAST Agent” means a transfer agent that holds balance certificates for the Corporation or a transfer agent that holds balance certificates for the Transferee, as the context requires.

“FAST Agent Agreement” means the form of agreement between a FAST Agent and the Corporation or between a FAST Agent and the Transferee, as the context requires, providing, *inter alia*, for the FAST Agent to be bound by the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation or the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, as applicable to such FAST Agent.

“Last Activity Date” has the meaning given to such term in Section 2(c)(2) of this Rule 32(A).

“Non-Critical Services” means the services of the Corporation described in the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation other than the Critical Services.

“Non-Eligible Participant” means a Participant of the Corporation that is a Delinquent Participant or Withdrawing Participant.

“Participant” means a Participant of the Corporation or a Participant of the Transferee, as the context requires.

“Participant Agreement” means the form of agreement between a Participant and the Corporation or between a Participant and the Transferee, as the context requires, providing, *inter alia*, for the Participant to be bound by the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation or the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, as applicable to such Participant.

“Pledgee” means a Pledgee for the pledge of securities at the Corporation or a Pledgee for the pledge of securities at the Transferee, as the context requires.

“Pledgee Agreement” means the form of agreement between a Pledgee and the Corporation or between a Pledgee and the Transferee, as the context requires, providing, *inter alia*, for the Pledgee to be bound by the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation or the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, as applicable to such Pledgee.

“Procedures” means the service guides, operational arrangements and other procedures of the Corporation or the service guides, operational arrangements and other procedures of the Transferee, as the context requires.

“Recovery and Wind-down Plan” means the plan for the recovery and orderly wind-down of the Corporation necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk or any other losses, adopted by the Corporation pursuant to Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Exchange Act.

“Recovery Plan” means the portion of the Recovery and Wind-down Plan addressing recovery.

“Rules” means the Rules of the Corporation or the Rules of the Transferee, as the context requires.

“Settling Bank” means a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledges of the Corporation or a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledges of the Transferee, as the context requires.

“Settling Bank Agreement” means the form of agreement between a Settling Bank and the Corporation or between a Settling Bank and the Transferee, as the context requires, providing, *inter alia*, for the Settling Bank to be bound by the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation or the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, as applicable to such Settling Bank.

“Third Party Entity” has the meaning given to such term in the definition of “Transferee” in this Section 1(a).

“Transfer” means a transfer of the Business of the Corporation pursuant to the Wind-down Plan.

“Transferee” means an entity to which the Business of the Corporation is transferred pursuant to the Wind-down Plan, and may include (i) a failover entity established by DTCC (a “Failover Entity”), (ii) a then-existing or newly-established third party entity (a “Third Party Entity”) or (iii) a bridge entity formed to operate the Business on an interim basis (a “Bridge Entity”). The Transferee shall be an entity that is legally, financially and operationally qualified to continue to operate the Business that is to be transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee.

“Transferee Documents” means the Rules and Procedures, Participant Agreement, Transition Period Securities Account Agreement, Pledge Agreement, DRS Agent Agreement, FAST Agent Agreement and Settling Bank Agreement of the Transferee.

“Transfer Notice” has the meaning given to such term in Section 3 of this Rule 32(A).

“Transfer Time” has the meaning given to such term in Section 2(c)(1) of this Rule 32(A).

“Transition Period” means a period of time following the Transfer, to be agreed between the Corporation and a Transferee, during which the Transferee shall maintain Transition Period Securities Accounts for Transition Period Securities Account Holders, as more specifically set forth in Section 5(b) of this Rule 32(A).

“Transition Period Securities Account” means a transition period securities account maintained by the Transferee on its books, as more specifically described in Section 5(b) of this Rule 32(A).

“Transition Period Securities Account Agreement” means a transition period securities account agreement of the Transferee, as more specifically described in Section 5(b) of this Rule 32(A).

“Transition Period Securities Account Holder” means the holder of a Transition Period Securities Account.

“Wind-down Plan” means the portion of the Recovery and Wind-down Plan addressing wind-down.

“Withdrawing Participant” means a Participant of the Corporation that has given notice to the Corporation of its election to withdraw as a Participant but that, at the Transfer Time, has not yet ceased to be a Participant (as determined by the Corporation).

- (b) Capitalized terms that are used in this Rule 32(A) but not defined in Section 1(a) above shall have the meanings given to such terms in other Rules and Procedures of the Corporation.**

Section 2. Initiation of Wind-down Plan

- (a) The Board of Directors may authorize the initiation of the Wind-down Plan and a transfer of the Business from the Corporation to a Transferee if the Board of Directors determines, in the exercise of its business judgment and subject to its fiduciary duties:**

- (1) that the application of some or all of the recovery tools set forth in the Recovery Plan, necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk or any other losses:**

- A. has not restored the Corporation to viability as a going concern, able to continue to provide its Critical Services to Participants and Pledgees of the Corporation in a safe and efficient manner; or**

B. will not likely restore the Corporation to viability as a going concern, able to continue to provide its Critical Services to Participants and Pledges of the Corporation in a safe and efficient manner; and

(2) that the implementation of the Wind-down Plan and a Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to a Transferee is in the best interests of the Corporation, its shareholders and creditors, Participants and Pledges and the US financial markets.

(b) The Board of Directors shall identify:

(1) the Critical Services and any Non-Critical Services that shall be transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee at the Transfer Time; and

(2) any Non-Critical Services that shall not be transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee.

The Critical Services and any Non-Critical Services that are transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee at the Transfer Time shall be provided by the Transferee following the Transfer Time. Any Non-Critical Services that are not transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee shall be terminated at the Transfer Time.

(c) The Board of Directors shall establish:

(1) the date and time (the “Transfer Time”) of the Transfer; and

(2) the last day that instructions in respect of securities and other financial products (e.g., instructions in respect of transfers, pledges, deposits, withdrawals and other transactions) may be effectuated through the facilities of the Corporation (the “Last Activity Date”).

The Corporation shall not accept any transactions for settlement after the Last Activity Date. All transactions to be settled after the Transfer Time shall be submitted to the Transferee in accordance with the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, and the Corporation shall have no responsibility for such transactions.

Section 3. Notice of Transfer of the Business

If the Board of Directors determines to implement a Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to a Transferee in accordance with this Rule 32(A) and the terms and conditions of the Wind-down Plan, the Corporation shall, in such manner as may be provided by the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation and subject to any required regulatory or judicial approval or consent:

- (a) provide Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks with a notice (a “Transfer Notice”) setting forth:**
- (1) the decision taken by the Board of Directors to Transfer the Business from the Corporation to the Transferee and a brief statement of the reasons therefor;**
 - (2) the name of the Transferee and basic information about the Transferee;**
 - (3) a description of the material financial and operational terms of the Transfer;**
 - (4) the (i) Transfer Time and (ii) Last Activity Date;**
 - (5) a summary of the matters described in Sections 4 through 8 of this Rule 32(A);**
 - (6) a list setting forth (i) which Participants of the Corporation are Eligible Participants and (ii) which Participants of the Corporation are Non-Eligible Participants; and**
 - (7) a list setting forth (i) the Critical Services and any Non-Critical Services that will be transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee at the Transfer Time and (ii) any Non-Critical Services that will not be transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee; and**
- (b) make available to Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks a copy of the Transferee Documents.**

No delay or failure on the part of the Corporation to provide a Transfer Notice or make available a copy of the Transferee Documents to any Participant, Pledgee, DRS Agent, FAST Agent or Settling Bank shall alter the timing or effectiveness of the Transfer. The Corporation shall also furnish the Transfer Notice and a copy of the Transferee Documents to its regulators.

Section 4. Transfer of Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks

Prior to the Transfer Time, the Corporation shall enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Failover Entity, or shall use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Third Party Entity or Bridge Entity, providing in either case that, at the Transfer Time, by operation of this Rule 32(A) and with no further action required by any party:

- (a) each Eligible Participant of the Corporation shall become (i) a Participant of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Participant Agreement with the Transferee;**
- (b) each Non-Eligible Participant of the Corporation shall become (i) a Transition Period Securities Account Holder of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Transition Period Securities Account Agreement with the Transferee;**
- (c) each Pledgee of the Corporation shall become (i) a Pledgee of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Pledgee Agreement with the Transferee;**
- (d) each DRS Agent of the Corporation shall become (i) a DRS Agent of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a DRS Agent Agreement with the Transferee;**
- (e) each FAST Agent of the Corporation shall become (i) a FAST Agent of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a FAST Agent Agreement with the Transferee; and**
- (f) each Settling Bank for Participants and Pledgees of the Corporation shall become (i) a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledgees of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Settling Bank Agreement with the Transferee.**

Section 5. Status of Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks

Prior to the Transfer Time, the Corporation shall enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Failover Entity, or shall use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Third Party Entity or Bridge Entity, providing in either case that, from and after the Transfer Time:

- (a) An Eligible Participant of the Corporation that has become a Participant of the Transferee shall have all of the rights and be subject to all of the obligations of a Participant set forth in the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, including the legal, financial, operational and collateral requirements of the Transferee applicable to such Participant.**
- (b) A Non-Eligible Participant of the Corporation that has become a Transition Period Securities Account Holder of the Transferee shall have the rights and be subject to the obligations of a Transition Period Securities Account Holder set forth in special provisions of the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee applicable to such Transition Period Securities Account Holder. Pursuant to such special provisions, a Transition Period Securities Account Holder must, *inter alia*, within the Transition Period, instruct the Transferee to transfer the financial assets credited to its Transition Period Securities Account (i) to a Participant of the Transferee through the facilities of the Transferee or (ii) to a recipient outside the facilities of the Transferee. No additional financial assets may be delivered versus payment to a Transition**

Period Securities Account during the Transition Period. At the end of the Transition Period, the Transition Period Securities Account Holder shall cease to be a Transition Period Securities Account Holder and its business relationship with the Transferee as a Transition Period Securities Account Holder shall be terminated, subject to any continuing obligations of such Transition Period Securities Account Holder to the Transferee set forth in the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee.

- (c) A Pledgee of the Corporation that has become a Pledgee of the Transferee shall have all of the rights and be subject to all of the obligations of a Pledgee set forth in the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, including the legal, financial and operational requirements of the Transferee applicable to such Pledgee.
- (d) A DRS Agent of the Corporation that has become a DRS Agent of the Transferee shall have all of the rights and be subject to all of the obligations of a DRS Agent set forth in the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, including the operational requirements of the Transferee applicable to such DRS Agent.
- (e) A FAST Agent of the Corporation that has become a FAST Agent of the Transferee shall have all of the rights and be subject to all of the obligations of a FAST Agent set forth in the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, including the operational requirements of the Transferee applicable to such FAST Agent.
- (f) A Settling Bank for Participants and Pledgees of the Corporation that has become a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledgees of the Transferee shall have all of the rights and be subject to all of the obligations of a Settling Bank set forth in the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, including the operational requirements of the Transferee applicable to such Settling Bank.

Section 6. Right of Non-Eligible Participants to Apply to the Transferee

Nothing contained in this Rule 32(A) shall preclude a Non-Eligible Participant of the Corporation from applying after the Transfer Time to become a Participant of the Transferee in accordance with such eligibility requirements and procedures as may be prescribed by the Transferee, but such Non-Eligible Participant shall not have the benefit of the automatic admission arrangements set forth in Section 4(a) of this Rule 32(A).

Section 7. Right to Withdraw from the Transferee

Nothing contained in this Rule 32(A) shall:

- (a) preclude an Eligible Participant of the Corporation that has become a Participant of the Transferee pursuant to Section 4(a) of this Rule 32(A) from electing to withdraw as a Participant from the Transferee at any time

after the Transfer Time, subject to the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee;

- (b) preclude a Non-Eligible Participant of the Corporation that has become a Transition Period Securities Account Holder of the Transferee pursuant to Section 4(b) of this Rule 32(A) from electing to withdraw as a Transition Period Securities Account Holder from the Transferee at any time after the Transfer Time, subject to the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee;
- (c) preclude a Pledgee of the Corporation that has become a Pledgee of the Transferee pursuant to Section 4(c) of this Rule 32(A) from electing to withdraw as a Pledgee from the Transferee at any time after the Transfer Time, subject to the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee;
- (d) preclude a DRS Agent of the Corporation that has become a DRS Agent of the Transferee pursuant to Section 4(d) of this Rule 32(A) from electing to withdraw as a DRS Agent from the Transferee at any time after the Transfer Time, subject to the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee;
- (e) preclude a FAST Agent of the Corporation that has become a FAST Agent of the Transferee pursuant to Section 4(e) of this Rule 32(A) from electing to withdraw as a FAST Agent from the Transferee at any time after the Transfer Time, subject to the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee; or
- (f) preclude a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledges of the Corporation that has become a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledges of the Transferee pursuant to Section 4(f) of this Rule 32(A) from electing to withdraw as a Settling Bank from the Transferee at any time after the Transfer Time, subject to the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee.

Section 8. Transfer of Inventory of Financial Assets

Prior to the Transfer Time, the Corporation shall enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Failover Entity, or shall use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Third Party Entity or Bridge Entity, providing in either case that, at the Transfer Time:

- (a) The Corporation shall transfer to the Transferee (i) its rights with respect to Cede (and thereby its rights with respect to the financial assets owned of record by Cede), (ii) the financial assets held by the Corporation at the Federal Reserve Bank of New York, (iii) the financial assets held by the Corporation at other central securities depositories, (iv) the financial assets held in custody for the Corporation with FAST Agents of the Corporation, (v) the financial assets held in custody for the Corporation with other custodians and (vi) the financial assets held in physical custody by the Corporation.

- (b) The Transferee shall establish security entitlements on its books for Eligible Participants of the Corporation that become Participants of the Transferee that replicate the security entitlements that the Corporation maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time for such Eligible Participants, and the Corporation shall simultaneously eliminate such security entitlements from its books. As a result, there shall be no interruption in the right that a Participant has to give entitlement orders for the transfer or redemption of financial assets between the time that security entitlements with respect to such financial assets are established on the books of the Transferee and the time that security entitlements with respect to such financial assets are eliminated from the books of the Corporation.**
- (c) The Transferee shall establish security entitlements on its books for Non-Eligible Participants of the Corporation that become Transition Period Securities Account Holders of the Transferee that replicate the security entitlements that the Corporation maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time for such Non-Eligible Participants, and the Corporation shall simultaneously eliminate such security entitlements from its books. As a result, there shall be no interruption in the right that a Transition Period Securities Account Holder has to give entitlement orders for the transfer or redemption of financial assets between the time that security entitlements with respect to such financial assets are established on the books of the Transferee and the time that security entitlements with respect to such financial assets are eliminated from the books of the Corporation.**
- (d) The Transferee shall establish pledges on its books in favor of Pledges of the Corporation that become Pledges of the Transferee that replicate the pledges that the Corporation maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time in favor of such Pledges, and the Corporation shall simultaneously eliminate such pledges from its books. As a result, there shall be no interruption in the control that a Pledgee has over financial assets between the time that pledges with respect to such financial assets are established on the books of the Transferee and the time that pledges with respect to such financial assets are eliminated from the books of the Corporation.**

Section 9. Certain Ex Ante Matters

Prior to the Transfer Time, the Corporation shall enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Failover Entity, or shall use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Third Party Entity or Bridge Entity, providing in either case that, with respect to the Critical Services and any Non-Critical Services that are transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee, for at least the duration of the Comparability Period, in order to facilitate a smooth Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to the Transferee:

- (a) the Rules and Procedures, Participant Agreement, Pledgee Agreement, DRS Agent Agreement, FAST Agent Agreement and Settling Bank Agreement of the Transferee shall be comparable in substance and effect to the Rules and Procedures, Participant Agreement, Pledgee Agreement, DRS Agent Agreement, FAST Agent Agreement and Settling Bank Agreement of the Corporation;**
- (b) the rights and obligations of Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks of the Transferee under the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee shall be comparable in substance and effect to the rights and obligations of Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks of the Corporation under the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation; and**
- (c) the Critical Services and any Non-Critical Services provided by the Transferee shall be provided in a manner that is comparable in substance and effect to the manner in which such Critical Services and Non-Critical Services were provided by the Corporation.**

Section 10. Subordination of Claims

In the event of any insolvency of the Corporation following the commencement of any Event Period (as defined in Rule 4), the unsecured claims (if any) of Participants of the Corporation that failed to pay or perform any obligation to the Corporation or elected to withdraw as Participants from and after such time shall (i) rank *pari passu* with each other and (ii) be subordinate to the claims of other unsecured creditors of the Corporation.

Section 11. Further Assurances; Additional Powers; Miscellaneous Matters

- (a) Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks of the Corporation shall assist and cooperate with the Corporation to effectuate any Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to a Transferee, including without limitation (i) by complying with the terms and conditions of this Rule 32(A) and their obligations hereunder and (ii) by providing the Corporation and the Transferee with such financial and operational information as they may request. The Corporation may provide to a Transferee any financial and operational information it has with respect to Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks of the Corporation as may be necessary and appropriate to effectuate an orderly Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to the Transferee.**
- (b) The Corporation may take such other actions and enter into such other arrangements (on behalf of itself and its Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks) as may be necessary and appropriate to effectuate an orderly Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to a Transferee, and otherwise accomplish the purposes of the Wind-down Plan.**

- (c) As a condition to receiving, and by virtue of accepting, the continuing benefits of being Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks of the Corporation, such Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks (i) hereby expressly agree to the arrangements set forth in this Rule 32(A) relating to their becoming Participants, Transition Period Securities Account Holders, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks, as the case may be, of the Transferee in the circumstances described herein and (ii) hereby expressly grant to the Corporation an irrevocable power of attorney to execute and deliver on their behalf such documents and instruments as the Transferee may request for this purpose. As Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks of the Corporation, such Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks are subject to the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation.**
- (d) No actions taken or omitted to be taken by the Corporation pursuant to this Rule 32(A) shall be deemed to constitute a default by the Corporation in the performance of any of its other obligations to Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks of the Corporation pursuant to any other Rules and Procedures of the Corporation.**
- (e) The Corporation shall have no liability to any Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents or Settling Banks of the Corporation for any actions taken or omitted to be taken by the Corporation pursuant to this Rule 32(A).**
- (f) The Corporation shall have no liability to any third parties, including any customers or clients of any Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents or Settling Banks of the Corporation, for any actions taken or omitted to be taken by the Corporation pursuant to this Rule 32(A).**
- (g) In connection with the Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to the Transferee, (i) the Corporation shall assign all of its Participant Agreements, Pledge Agreements, DRS Agent Agreements, FAST Agent Agreements and Settling Bank Agreements to the Transferee and (ii) the Transferee shall assume such Participant Agreements, Pledge Agreements, DRS Agent Agreements, FAST Agent Agreements and Settling Bank Agreements.**
- (h) All rights of the Corporation that are not assigned to the Transferee in connection with the Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to the Transferee, including any claims of the Corporation against Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks arising at any time prior to the Transfer Time, shall remain rights of the Corporation, enforceable by the Corporation in accordance with their terms and subject to applicable law (including insolvency law).**
- (i) All obligations and liabilities of the Corporation that are not assigned to and assumed by the Transferee in connection with the Transfer of the Business**

from the Corporation to the Transferee shall remain obligations and liabilities of the Corporation, enforceable against the Corporation in accordance with their terms and subject to applicable law (including insolvency law).

- (i) In the event of any conflict between the provisions of this Rule 32(A) and any other Rules and Procedures of the Corporation, the provisions of this Rule 32(A) shall prevail.**

* * *

RULE 38

Market Disruption and Force Majeure

Section 1. Market Disruption Events

On the happening of any one or more of the events or circumstances set out below (each a “Market Disruption Event”) which, in any case, is likely to materially affect or has materially affected the business, operations, safeguarding of securities or funds, or physical functions of the Corporation, including performance by the Corporation of any obligations under these Rules and Procedures, the Corporation shall be entitled to take such action as is set out in this Rule 38:

- (a) a general suspension or limitation of trading on the New York Stock Exchange, NASDAQ, or any other exchange or market relevant to the pricing or trading of securities settled through the Corporation;
- (b) the declaration of a trading or banking moratorium in the United States or New York State;
- (c) any international organization, the government of any nation, state, or territory, or any institution or agency thereof, or any self-regulatory organization taking action of a nature likely to affect the normal course of business, including performance by the Corporation of obligations under these Rules and Procedures;
- (d) the unavailability, failure, malfunction, overload, or restriction (whether partial or total) of any payment, bank transfer or wire, or securities settlement system;
- (e) the unavailability, failure, malfunction, overload, or restriction (whether partial or total) of any cash or securities depository, custodian or clearing bank, or any material variation of such depository’s, custodian’s or clearing bank’s processing or turnaround times, whether or not occasioned by action of such depository, custodian or clearing bank; or
- (f) any Force Majeure, which shall include (without limitation) any terrorist or other criminal action, war or hostilities between any nations, national emergency, riot, civil unrest, acts of God or the public enemy, fire or other casualty, flood, accident, disaster (including any nuclear, atomic, environmental, or natural disaster), sabotage, bomb threat, labor dispute, embargo, the unavailability, failure, malfunction, or restriction of communication, computer, or data processing systems or facilities, or of software or technology, cyber attack, lack of transportation facilities, interruption (whether partial or total) of power supplies or other utility or service, or any event, situation, or circumstance beyond the reasonable control of the parties (whether or not similar to any of the foregoing), including those imminent or threatened.

Section 2. Powers of the Corporation

If the Board of Directors or any officer of the Corporation listed below determines, in its, his, or her judgment that there is a Market Disruption Event, the Corporation shall be entitled to act (or refrain from acting) as prescribed in Section 3 of this Rule 38. To the extent practicable, the determination of the existence of a Market Disruption Event, and the actions to be taken in response thereto, shall be made by the Board of Directors at a meeting where a quorum is present and acting. However, if the Corporation is unable to convene a Board of Directors meeting promptly and timely in such event, then such determination may be made by either the Chief Executive Officer, the Chief Financial Officer, the Group Chief Risk Officer, or the General Counsel, or by any management committee on which all of the foregoing officers serves (an “Officer Market Disruption Event Action”), provided that the Corporation shall convene a Board of Directors meeting as soon as practicable thereafter (and in any event within 5 Business Days following such determination) to ratify, modify or rescind such Officer Market Disruption Event Action.

Section 3. Authority to take Actions

Upon the determination that there is a Market Disruption Event, the Corporation shall be entitled, during the pendency of such Market Disruption Event, to:

- (a) suspend the provision of any or all services of the Corporation; and**
- (b) take, or refrain from taking, or require Participants and/or Pledges (whether or not they are affected by the Market Disruption Event) to take or refrain from taking, any and all action which the Corporation considers appropriate to prevent, address, correct, mitigate or alleviate the event and facilitate the continuation of services as may be practicable, and, in that context, issue instructions to Participants and/or Pledges.**

Section 4. Notifications

4.1 Each Participant and Pledgee shall notify the Corporation immediately upon becoming aware of any Market Disruption Event.

4.2 The Corporation shall promptly notify Participants and Pledgees of any action the Corporation takes or intends to take pursuant to Section 3 of this Rule 38.

4.3 The Corporation shall attempt to consult with officials of the SEC prior to the Corporation taking any action pursuant to Section 3 of this Rule 38; provided, however, that the authority contained herein shall not be conditioned by such consultation.

The Corporation shall advise the SEC as soon as practicable by telephone, and confirmed in writing, of any action taken by the Corporation pursuant to Section 3 of this Rule 38, and a record of such writing shall be promptly made and filed with the Corporation’s

records and shall be available for inspection by any Participant or Pledgee during regular business hours on Business Days.

The Corporation shall also advise the SEC as soon as practicable by telephone, and confirmed in writing, at such time it determines that there is no longer a Market Disruption Event and the Corporation terminates the actions taken by the Corporation pursuant to Section 3 of this Rule 38. A record of such writing shall be promptly made and filed with the Corporation's records and shall be available for inspection by any Participant or Pledgee during regular business hours on Business Days.

Section 5. Certain Miscellaneous Matters

- (a) Without limiting any other provisions in these Rules and Procedures concerning limitations on liability, none of the Corporation, its directors, officers, employees, agents, or contractors shall be liable to a Participant, Pledgee or any other person (including any customer or client thereof) for:
- (i) any failure, hindrance, interruption or delay in performance in whole or in part of the obligations of the Corporation under the Rules or Procedures, if that failure, hindrance, interruption or delay arises out of or relates to a Market Disruption Event; or
 - (ii) any loss, liability, damage, cost or expense arising from or relating in any way to any actions taken, or omitted to be taken, pursuant to this Rule 38.
- (b) The power of the Corporation to take any action pursuant to this Rule 38 also includes the power to repeal, rescind, revoke, amend, or vary any such action.
- (c) The powers of the Corporation pursuant to this Rule 38 shall be in addition to, and not in derogation of, authority granted elsewhere in these Rules and Procedures to take action as specified therein.
- (d) In the event of any conflict between the provisions of this Rule 38 and any other Rules or Procedures, the provisions of this Rule 38 shall prevail.

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

For complete Form 19b 4 instructions please refer to the EFFF website.

Form 19b-4 Information *

Add Remove View

The self regulatory organization must provide all required information, presented in a clear and comprehensible manner, to enable the public to provide meaningful comment on the proposal and for the Commission to determine whether the proposal is consistent with the Act and applicable rules and regulations under the Act.

Exhibit 1 - Notice of Proposed Rule Change *

Add Remove View

The Notice section of this Form 19b 4 must comply with the guidelines for publication in the Federal Register as well as any requirements for electronic filing as published by the Commission (if applicable). The Office of the Federal Register (OFR) offers guidance on Federal Register publication requirements in the Federal Register Document Drafting Handbook, October 1998 Revision. For example, all references to the federal securities laws must include the corresponding cite to the United States Code in a footnote. All references to SEC rules must include the corresponding cite to the Code of Federal Regulations in a footnote. All references to Securities Exchange Act Releases must include the release number, release date, Federal Register cite, Federal Register date, and corresponding file number (e.g., SR [SRO] xx xx). A material failure to comply with these guidelines will result in the proposed rule change being deemed not properly filed. See also Rule 0 3 under the Act (17 CFR 240.0 3)

Exhibit 1A- Notice of Proposed Rule Change, Security-Based Swap Submission, or Advance Notice by Clearing Agencies *

Add Remove View

The Notice section of this Form 19b 4 must comply with the guidelines for publication in the Federal Register as well as any requirements for electronic filing as published by the Commission (if applicable). The Office of the Federal Register (OFR) offers guidance on Federal Register publication requirements in the Federal Register Document Drafting Handbook, October 1998 Revision. For example, all references to the federal securities laws must include the corresponding cite to the United States Code in a footnote. All references to SEC rules must include the corresponding cite to the Code of Federal Regulations in a footnote. All references to Securities Exchange Act Releases must include the release number, release date, Federal Register cite, Federal Register date, and corresponding file number (e.g., SR [SRO] xx xx). A material failure to comply with these guidelines will result in the proposed rule change, security based swap submission, or advance notice being deemed not properly filed. See also Rule 0 3 under the Act (17 CFR 240.0 3)

Exhibit 2 - Notices, Written Comments, Transcripts, Other Communications

Add Remove View

Copies of notices, written comments, transcripts, other communications. If such documents cannot be filed electronically in accordance with Instruction F, they shall be filed in accordance with Instruction G.

Exhibit Sent As Paper Document

Exhibit 3 - Form, Report, or Questionnaire

Add Remove View

Copies of any form, report, or questionnaire that the self regulatory organization proposes to use to help implement or operate the proposed rule change, or that is referred to by the proposed rule change.

Exhibit Sent As Paper Document

Exhibit 4 - Marked Copies

Add Remove View

The full text shall be marked, in any convenient manner, to indicate additions to and deletions from the immediately preceding filing. The purpose of Exhibit 4 is to permit the staff to identify immediately the changes made from the text of the rule with which it has been working.

Exhibit 5 - Proposed Rule Text

Add Remove View

The self regulatory organization may choose to attach as Exhibit 5 proposed changes to rule text in place of providing it in Item I and which may otherwise be more easily readable if provided separately from Form 19b 4. Exhibit 5 shall be considered part of the proposed rule change.

Partial Amendment

Add Remove View

If the self regulatory organization is amending only part of the text of a lengthy proposed rule change, it may, with the Commission's permission, file only those portions of the text of the proposed rule change in which changes are being made if the filing (i.e. partial amendment) is clearly understandable on its face. Such partial amendment shall be clearly identified and marked to show deletions and additions.

1. Text of the Advance Notice

(a) The advance notice of The Depository Trust Company (“DTC”) proposes to (1) adopt the Recovery & Wind-down Plan of DTC (“R&W Plan” or “Plan”), attached hereto as Exhibit 5a; and (2) amend the Rules, By-Laws and Organization Certificate of DTC (“Rules”)¹ in order to adopt Rule 32(A) (Wind-down of the Corporation) and Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure) (each proposed Rule 32(A) and proposed Rule 38, a “Proposed Rule” and, collectively, the “Proposed Rules”), attached hereto as Exhibit 5b.

The R&W Plan would be maintained by DTC in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (“Act”), by providing plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of DTC necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses, as described below.² The Proposed Rules are designed to (1) facilitate the implementation of the R&W Plan when necessary and, in particular, allow DTC to effectuate its strategy for winding down and transferring its business; (2) provide Participants with transparency around critical provisions of the R&W Plan that relate to their rights, responsibilities and obligations; and (3) provide DTC with the legal basis to implement those provisions of the R&W Plan when necessary, as described below.

(b) Not applicable.

(c) Not applicable.

2. Procedures of the Self-Regulatory Organization

The proposal was approved by the Board of Directors of DTC (“Board”) at a meeting duly called and held on October 18, 2017.

3. Self-Regulatory Organization’s Statement of the Purpose of, and Statutory Basis for, the Proposed Rule Change

Not applicable.

4. Self-Regulatory Organization’s Statement on Burden on Competition

Not applicable.

¹ Capitalized terms used herein and not otherwise defined herein are defined in the Rules, available at www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/rules/DTC_rules.pdf.

² 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

5. Self-Regulatory Organization’s Statement on Comments on the Proposed Rule Change Received from Participants, Participants, or Others

While DTC has not solicited or received any written comments relating to this proposal, DTC has conducted outreach to its Participants in order to provide them with notice of the proposal. DTC will notify the Commission of any written comments received by DTC.

6. Extension of Time Period for Commission Action

DTC does not consent to an extension of the time period specified in Section 19(b)(2) of the Act for Commission action.³

7. Basis for Summary Effectiveness Pursuant to Section 19(b)(3) or for Accelerated Effectiveness Pursuant to Section 19(b)(2)

- (a) Not applicable.
- (b) Not applicable.
- (c) Not applicable.
- (d) Not applicable.

8. Proposed Rule Change Based on Rules of Another Self-Regulatory Organization or of the Commission

Not applicable.

9. Security-Based Swap Submissions Filed Pursuant to Section 3C of the Act

Not applicable.

10. Advance Notice Filed Pursuant to Section 806(e) of the Payment, Clearing and Settlement Supervision Act of 2010

Description of Amendment No. 1

This filing constitutes Amendment No. 1 (“Amendment”) to the advance notice SR-DTC-2017-803 (“Original Filing”) previously filed by DTC.⁴ DTC is amending the proposed R&W Plan and the Original Filing in order to clarify certain matters and make minor technical and conforming changes to the R&W Plan, as described below and as marked on Exhibit 4 hereto. To the extent such changes to the Plan require changes to the Original Filing, the information provided under “*Description of Proposed Changes*” in the Original Filing has been amended and

³ 15 U.S.C. 78s(b)(2).

⁴ See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 82579 (January 24, 2018), 83 FR 4310 (January 30, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-803).

is restated in its entirety below. Other sections of the Original Filing are unchanged and are restated in their entirety for convenience.

First, this Amendment would clarify the use in the Plan of the term “Participant Default Losses.” This Amendment would also clarify the actions and tools available in the third phase of the Crisis Continuum, which is referred to as the “Participant Default phase.” This Amendment would also make conforming changes as necessary to reflect the use of these terms.

Second, this Amendment would clarify that actions and tools described in the Plan that are available in one phase of the Crisis Continuum may be used in subsequent phases of the Crisis Continuum, when appropriate to address the applicable situation. This Amendment would also clarify that allocation of losses resulting from a Participant Default would be applied when provide for in, and in accordance with, Rule 4.

Third, this Amendment would clarify that the Recovery Corridor (as defined therein) is not a “sub-phase” of the recovery phase. Rather, the Recovery Corridor is a period of time that would occur toward the end of the Participant Default phase, when indicators are that DTC may transition into the recovery phase. Thus, the Recovery Corridor precedes the recovery phase.

Fourth, this Amendment would make revisions to address the allocation of losses resulting from a Participant Default in order to more closely conform such statements to the changes proposed by the Loss Allocation Filing, as defined below.

Fifth, this Amendment would clarify the notifications that DTC would be required to make under the Proposed Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure).

Finally, this Amendment would make minor, technical and conforming revisions to correct typographical errors and to simplify descriptions. For example, such revisions would use lower case for terms that are not defined therein, and would use upper case for terms that are defined. The Amendment would also simplify certain descriptions by removing extraneous words and statements that are repetitive. These minor, technical revisions would not alter the substance of the proposal.

Description of Proposed Changes

DTC is proposing to adopt the R&W Plan to be used by the Board and management in the event DTC encounters scenarios that could potentially prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. The R&W Plan would identify (i) the recovery tools available to DTC to address the risks of (a) uncovered losses or liquidity shortfalls resulting from the default of one or more of its Participants, and (b) losses arising from non-default events, such as damage to its physical assets, a cyber-attack, or custody and investment losses, and (ii) the strategy for implementation of such tools. The R&W Plan would also establish the strategy and framework for the orderly wind-down of DTC and the transfer of its business in the remote event the implementation of the available recovery tools does not successfully return DTC to financial viability.

As discussed in greater detail below, the R&W Plan would provide, among other matters, (i) an overview of the business of DTC and its parent, The Depository Trust & Clearing

Corporation (“DTCC”); (ii) an analysis of DTC’s intercompany arrangements and critical links to other financial market infrastructures (“FMIs”); (iii) a description of DTC’s services, and the criteria used to determine which services are considered critical; (iv) a description of the DTC and DTCC governance structure; (v) a description of the governance around the overall recovery and wind-down program; (vi) a discussion of tools available to DTC to mitigate credit/market and liquidity risks, including recovery indicators and triggers, and the governance around management of a stress event along a “Crisis Continuum” timeline; (vii) a discussion of potential non-default losses and the resources available to DTC to address such losses, including recovery triggers and tools to mitigate such losses; (viii) an analysis of the recovery tools’ characteristics, including how they are comprehensive, effective, and transparent, how the tools provide appropriate incentives to Participants to, among other things, control and monitor the risks they may present to DTC, and how DTC seeks to minimize the negative consequences of executing its recovery tools; and (ix) the framework and approach for the orderly wind-down and transfer of DTC’s business, including an estimate of the time and costs to effect a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC.

The R&W Plan would be structured as a roadmap, and would identify and describe the tools that DTC may use to effect a recovery from the events and scenarios described therein. Certain recovery tools that would be identified in the R&W Plan are based in the Rules (including the Proposed Rules) and, as such, descriptions of those tools would include descriptions of, and reference to, the applicable Rules and any related internal policies and procedures. Other recovery tools that would be identified in the R&W Plan are based in contractual arrangements to which DTC is a party, including, for example, existing committed or pre-arranged liquidity arrangements. Further, the R&W Plan would state that DTC may develop further supporting internal guidelines and materials that may provide operational matters described in the Plan, and that such documents would be supplemental and subordinate to the Plan.

Key factors considered in developing the R&W Plan and the types of tools available to DTC were its governance structure and the nature of the markets within which DTC operates. As a result of these considerations, many of the tools available to DTC that would be described in the R&W Plan are DTC’s existing, business-as-usual risk management and default management tools, which would continue to be applied in scenarios of increasing stress. In addition to these existing, business-as-usual tools, the R&W Plan would describe DTC’s other principal recovery tools, which include, for example, (i) identifying, monitoring and managing general business risk and holding sufficient liquid net assets funded by equity (“LNA”) to cover potential general business losses pursuant to the Clearing Agency Policy on Capital Requirements (“Capital Policy”),⁵ (ii) maintaining the Clearing Agency Capital Replenishment Plan (“Replenishment Plan”) as a viable plan for the replenishment of capital should DTC’s equity fall close to or below the amount being held pursuant to the Capital Policy,⁶ and (iii) the

⁵ See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 81105 (July 7, 2017), 82 FR 32399 (July 13, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-003; SR-FICC-2017-007; SR-NSCC-2017-004).

⁶ See id.

process for the allocation of losses among Participants as provided in Rule 4.⁷ The R&W Plan would provide governance around the selection and implementation of the recovery tool or tools most relevant to mitigate a stress scenario and any applicable loss or liquidity shortfall.

The development of the R&W Plan is facilitated by the Office of Recovery & Resolution Planning (“R&R Team”) of DTCC.⁸ The R&R Team reports to the DTCC Management Committee (“Management Committee”) and is responsible for maintaining the R&W Plan and for the development and ongoing maintenance of the overall recovery and wind-down planning process. The Board, or such committees as may be delegated authority by the Board from time to time pursuant to its charter, would review and approve the R&W Plan biennially, and would also review and approve any changes that are proposed to the R&W Plan outside of the biennial review.

As discussed in greater detail below, the Proposed Rules would define the procedures that may be employed in the event of a DTC wind-down, and would provide for DTC’s authority to take certain actions on the occurrence of a “Market Disruption Event,” as defined therein. Significantly, the Proposed Rules would provide Participants with transparency and certainty with respect to these matters. The Proposed Rules would facilitate the implementation of the R&W Plan, particularly DTC’s strategy for winding down and transferring its business, and would provide DTC with the legal basis to implement those aspects of the R&W Plan.

DTC R&W Plan

The R&W Plan is intended to be used by the Board and DTC’s management in the event DTC encounters scenarios that could potentially prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. The R&W Plan would be structured to provide a roadmap, define the strategy, and identify the tools available to DTC to either (i) recover, in the event it experiences losses that exceed its prefunded resources (such strategies and tools referred to herein as the “Recovery Plan”) or (ii) wind-down its business in a manner designed to permit the

⁷ See Rule 4 (Participants Fund and Participants Investment), supra note 1. DTC is proposing changes to Rule 4 regarding allocation of losses in a separate filing submitted simultaneously with the Original Filing. See Securities Exchange Act Release Nos. 82432 (January 2, 2018), 83 FR 884 (January 8, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-021) and 82579 (January 24, 2018), 83 FR 4310 (January 30, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-803) (collectively referred to herein as the “Loss Allocation Filing”). DTC has submitted an amendment to the Loss Allocation Filing. A copy of the amendment to the Loss Allocation Filing is available at <http://www.dtcc.com/legal/sec-rule-filings.aspx>. DTC expects the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (“Commission”) to review both proposals, as amended, together, and, as such, the proposal described in this filing anticipates the approval and implementation of those proposed changes to the Rules.

⁸ DTCC operates on a shared services model with respect to DTC and its other subsidiaries. Most corporate functions are established and managed on an enterprise-wide basis pursuant to intercompany agreements under which it is generally DTCC that provides a relevant service to a subsidiary, including DTC.

continuation of its critical services in the event that such recovery efforts are not successful (such strategies and tools referred to herein as the “Wind-down Plan”). The description of the R&W Plan below is intended to highlight the purpose and expected effects of the material aspects of the R&W Plan, and to provide Participants with appropriate transparency into these features.

Business Overview, Critical Services, and Governance

The introduction to the R&W Plan would identify the document’s purpose and its regulatory background, and would outline a summary of the Plan. The stated purpose of the R&W Plan is that it is to be used by the Board and DTC management in the event DTC encounters scenarios that could potentially prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. The R&W Plan would be maintained by DTC in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act⁹ by providing plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of DTC.

The R&W Plan would describe DTCC’s business profile, provide a summary of DTC’s services, and identify the intercompany arrangements and critical links between DTC and other FMIs. This overview section would provide a context for the R&W Plan by describing DTC’s business, organizational structure and critical links to other entities. By providing this context, this section would facilitate the analysis of the potential impact of utilizing the recovery tools set forth in later sections of the Recovery Plan, and the analysis of the factors that would be addressed in implementing the Wind-down Plan.

DTCC is a user-owned and user-governed holding company and is the parent company of DTC and its affiliates, National Securities Clearing Corporation (“NSCC”) and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation (“FICC,” and, together with NSCC and DTC, the “Clearing Agencies”). The Plan would describe how corporate support services are provided to DTC from DTCC and DTCC’s other subsidiaries through intercompany agreements under a shared services model.

The Plan would provide a description of established links between DTC and other FMIs, both domestic and foreign, including central securities depositories (“CSDs”) and central counterparties (“CCPs”), as well as the twelve U.S. Federal Reserve Banks. In general, these links are either “inbound” or “issuer” links, in which the other FMI is a Participant and/or a Pledgee and maintains one or more accounts at DTC, or “outbound” or “investor” links in which DTC maintains one or more accounts at another FMI. Key FMIs with which DTC maintains critical links include CDS Clearing and Depository Services Inc. (“CDS”), the Canadian CSD, with participant links in both directions; Euroclear Bank SA/NV (“EB”) for cross-border collateral management services; and The Options Clearing Corporation (“OCC”) and the Federal Reserve Bank of New York (“FRBNY”), each of which is both a Participant and a Pledgee. The critical link for the U.S. marketplace is the relationship between DTC and NSCC, through which continuous net settlement (“CNS”) transactions are completed by settlement at DTC, and DTC acts as settlement agent for NSCC for end-of-day funds settlement.¹⁰ This section of the Plan,

⁹ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

¹⁰ DTC has other links in addition to those mentioned above. The current list of linked CSDs is available on the DTCC website.

identifying and briefly describing DTC's established links, would provide a mapping of critical connections and dependencies that may need to be relied on or otherwise addressed in connection with the implementation of either the Recovery Plan or the Wind-down Plan.

The Plan would define the criteria for classifying certain of DTC's services as "critical," and would identify those critical services and the rationale for their classification. This section would provide an analysis of the potential systemic impact from a service disruption, and is important for evaluating how the recovery tools and the wind-down strategy would facilitate and provide for the continuation of DTC's critical services to the markets it serves. The criteria that would be used to identify a DTC service or function as critical would include consideration as to (1) whether there is a lack of alternative providers or products; (2) whether failure of the service could impact DTC's ability to perform its book-entry and settlement services; (3) whether failure of the service could impact DTC's ability to perform its payment system functions; and (4) whether the service is interconnected with other participants and processes within the U.S. financial system, for example, with other FMIs, settlement banks and broker-dealers. The Plan would then list each of those services, functions or activities that DTC has identified as "critical" based on the applicability of these four criteria. Such critical services would include, for example, MMIs and Commercial Paper Processing,¹¹ Mandatory and Voluntary Corporate Actions,¹² Cash and Stock Distributions,¹³ and End of Day Net Money Settlement.¹⁴ The R&W Plan would also include a non-exhaustive list of DTC services that are not deemed critical.

The evaluation of which services provided by DTC are deemed critical is important for purposes of determining how the R&W Plan would facilitate the continuity of those services. As discussed further below, while DTC's Wind-down Plan would provide for the transfer of all critical services to a transferee in the event DTC's wind-down is implemented, it would anticipate that any non-critical services that are ancillary and beneficial to a critical service, or that otherwise have substantial user demand from the continuing membership, would also be transferred.

The Plan would describe the governance structure of both DTCC and DTC. This section of the Plan would identify the ownership and governance model of these entities at both the Board of Directors and management levels. The Plan would state that the stages of escalation required to manage recovery under the Recovery Plan or to invoke DTC's wind-down under the Wind-down Plan would range from relevant business line managers up to the Board through DTC's governance structure. The Plan would then identify the parties responsible for certain

¹¹ See Rule 9(C) (Transactions in MMI Securities), supra note 1.

¹² See DTC Reorganizations Service Guide, available at www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/service-guides/Reorganizations.pdf.

¹³ See DTC Distributions Service Guide, available at <http://www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/service-guides/Service%20Guide%20Distributions.pdf>.

¹⁴ See DTC Settlement Service Guide, available at www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/service-guides/Settlement.pdf.

activities under both the Recovery Plan and the Wind-down Plan, and would describe their respective roles. The Plan would identify the Risk Committee of the Board (“Board Risk Committee”) as being responsible for oversight of risk management activities at DTC, which include focusing on both oversight of risk management systems and processes designed to identify and manage various risks faced by DTC, and, due to DTC’s critical role in the markets in which it operates, oversight of DTC’s efforts to mitigate systemic risks that could impact those markets and the broader financial system.¹⁵ The Plan would identify the DTCC Management Risk Committee (“Management Risk Committee”) as primarily responsible for general, day-to-day risk management through delegated authority from the Board Risk Committee. The Plan would state that the Management Risk Committee has delegated specific day-to-day risk management, including management of risks addressed through margining systems and related activities, to the DTCC Group Chief Risk Office (“GCRO”), which works with staff within the DTCC Financial Risk Management group. Finally, the Plan would describe the role of the Management Committee, which provides overall direction for all aspects of DTC’s business, technology, and operations and the functional areas that support these activities.

The Plan would describe the governance of recovery efforts in response to both default losses and non-default losses under the Recovery Plan, identifying the groups responsible for those recovery efforts. Specifically, the Plan would state that the Management Risk Committee provides oversight of actions relating to the default of a Participant, which would be reported and escalated to it through the GCRO, and the Management Committee provides oversight of actions relating to non-default events that could result in a loss, which would be reported and escalated to it from the DTCC Chief Financial Officer (“CFO”) and the DTCC Treasury group that reports to the CFO, and from other relevant subject matter experts based on the nature and circumstances of the non-default event.¹⁶ More generally, the Plan would state that the type of loss and the nature and circumstances of the events that lead to the loss would dictate the components of governance to address that loss, including the escalation path to authorize those actions. As described further below, both the Recovery Plan and the Wind-down Plan would describe the governance of escalations, decisions, and actions under each of those plans.

Finally, the Plan would describe the role of the R&R Team in managing the overall recovery and wind-down program and plans for each of the Clearing Agencies.

¹⁵ The charter of the Board Risk Committee is available at <http://www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/policy-and-compliance/DTCC-BOD-Risk-Committee-Charter.pdf>.

¹⁶ The Plan would state that these groups would be involved to address how to mitigate the financial impact of non-default losses, and in recommending mitigating actions, the Management Committee would consider information and recommendations from relevant subject matter experts based on the nature and circumstances of the non-default event. Any necessary operational response to these events, however, would be managed in accordance with applicable incident response/business continuity process; for example, processes established by the DTCC Technology Risk Management group would be followed in response to a cyber event.

DTC Recovery Plan

The Recovery Plan is intended to be a roadmap of those actions that DTC may employ to monitor and, as needed, stabilize its financial condition. As each event that could lead to a financial loss could be unique in its circumstances, the Recovery Plan would not be prescriptive and would permit DTC to maintain flexibility in its use of identified tools and in the sequence in which such tools are used, subject to any conditions in the Rules or the contractual arrangement on which such tool is based. DTC's Recovery Plan would consist of (1) a description of the risk management surveillance, tools, and governance that DTC would employ across evolving stress scenarios that it may face as it transitions through a "Crisis Continuum," described below; (2) a description of DTC's risk of losses that may result from non-default events, and the financial resources and recovery tools available to DTC to manage those risks and any resulting losses; and (3) an evaluation of the characteristics of the recovery tools that may be used in response to either losses arising out of a Participant Default (as defined below) or non-default losses, as described in greater detail below. In all cases, DTC would act in accordance with the Rules, within the governance structure described in the R&W Plan, and in accordance with applicable regulatory oversight to address each situation in order to best protect DTC, its Participants and the markets in which it operates.

Managing Participant Default Losses and Liquidity Needs Through the Crisis Continuum. The Plan would describe the risk management surveillance, tools, and governance that DTC may employ across an increasing stress environment, which is referred to as the "Crisis Continuum." This description would identify those tools that can be employed to mitigate losses, and mitigate or minimize liquidity needs, as the market environment becomes increasingly stressed. The phases of the Crisis Continuum would include (1) a stable market phase, (2) a stressed market phase, (3) a phase commencing with DTC's decision to cease to act for a Participant or Affiliated Family of Participants (referred to in the Plan as the "Participant Default phase"),¹⁷ and (4) a recovery phase. This section of the Recovery Plan would address conditions and circumstances relating to DTC's decision to cease to act for a Participant pursuant to the Rules.¹⁸ For ease of reference, the R&W Plan would, for purposes of the Plan, use the term "Participant Default Losses" to refer to losses that arise out of or relate to the Participant Default and resulting cease to act (including any losses that arise from liquidation of the Participant's Collateral).

¹⁷ The Plan defines an "Affiliated Family" of Participants as a number of affiliated entities that are all Participants of DTC.

¹⁸ In the Plan, "cease to act" and the actions that may lead to such decision, are used within the context of the Rules, including Rule 4 (Participants Fund and Participants Investment), Rule 9(A) (Transactions in Securities and Money Payments), Rule 9(B) (Transactions in Eligible Securities), Rule 9(C) (Transactions in MMI Securities), Rule 10 (Discretionary Termination), Rule 11 (Mandatory Termination) and Rule 12 (Insolvency), supra note 1. Further, the term "Participant Default" would also be used in the Plan as such term is defined in Rule 4, as proposed to be amended by the Loss Allocation filing, supra note 7.

The Recovery Plan would provide context to its roadmap through this Crisis Continuum by describing DTC's ongoing management of credit, market risk and liquidity risk, and its existing process for measuring and reporting its risks as they align with established thresholds for its tolerance of those risks. The Recovery Plan would discuss the management of credit/market risk and liquidity exposures together, because the tools that address these risks can be deployed either separately or in a coordinated approach in order to address both exposures. DTC manages these risk exposures collectively to limit their overall impact on DTC and its Participants. DTC has built-in mechanisms to limit exposures and replenish financial resources used in a stress event, in order to continue to operate in a safe and sound manner. DTC is a closed, collateralized system in which liquidity resources are matched against risk management controls, so, at any time, the potential net settlement obligation of the Participant or Affiliated Family of Participants with the largest net settlement obligation cannot exceed the amount of liquidity resources.¹⁹ While Collateral securities are subject to market price risk, DTC manages its liquidity and market risks through the calculation of the required deposits to the Participants Fund²⁰ and risk management controls, i.e., collateral haircuts, the Collateral Monitor²¹ and Net Debit Cap.²²

The Recovery Plan would outline the metrics and indicators that DTC has developed to evaluate a stress situation against established risk tolerance thresholds. Each risk mitigation tool identified in the Recovery Plan would include a description of the escalation thresholds that allow for effective and timely reporting to the appropriate internal management staff and committees, or to the Board. The Recovery Plan would make clear that these tools and escalation protocols would be calibrated across each phase of the Crisis Continuum. The Recovery Plan would also establish that DTC would retain the flexibility to deploy such tools either separately or in a coordinated approach, and to use other alternatives to these actions and tools as necessitated by the circumstances of a particular Participant Default event, in accordance with the Rules. Therefore, the Recovery Plan would both provide DTC with a roadmap to follow

¹⁹ DTC's liquidity risk management strategy, including the manner in which DTC would deploy liquidity tools as well as its intraday use of liquidity, is described in the Clearing Agency Liquidity Risk Management Framework. See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 80489 (April 19, 2017), 82 FR 19120 (April 25, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-004, SR-DTC-2017-005, SR-FICC-2017-008).

²⁰ See Rule 4 (Participants Fund and Participants Investment), supra note 1.

²¹ See Rule 1, Section 1, supra note 1. For DTC, credit risk and market risk are closely related, as DTC monitors credit exposures from Participants through these risk management controls, which limit Participant settlement obligations to the amount of available liquidity resources and require those obligations to be fully collateralized. The pledge or liquidation of collateral in an amount sufficient to restore liquidity resources depends on market values and demand, *i.e.*, market risk exposure. Such risk management controls are part of DTC's market risk management strategy and are designed to comply with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(4) under the Act, where these risks are referred to as "credit risks." See also 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(4).

²² Id.

within each phase of the Crisis Continuum, and would permit it to adjust its risk management measures to address the unique circumstances of each event.

The Recovery Plan would describe the conditions that mark each phase of the Crisis Continuum, and would identify actions that DTC could take as it transitions through each phase in order to both prevent losses from materializing through active risk management, and to restore the financial health of DTC during a period of stress.

The stable market phase of the Crisis Continuum would describe active risk management activities in the normal course of business. These activities would include performing (1) backtests to evaluate the adequacy of the collateral level and the haircut sufficiency for covering market price volatility and (2) stress testing to cover market price moves under real historical and hypothetical scenarios to assess the haircut adequacy under extreme but plausible market conditions. The backtesting and stress testing results are escalated, as necessary, to internal and Board committees.²³

The Recovery Plan would describe some of the indicators of the stress market phase of the Crisis Continuum, which would include, for example, volatility in market prices of certain assets where there is increased uncertainty among market participants about the fundamental value of those assets. This phase would involve general market stresses, when no Participant Default would be imminent. Within the description of this phase, the Recovery Plan would provide that DTC may take targeted, routine risk management measures as necessary and as permitted by the Rules.

Within the Participant Default phase of the Crisis Continuum, the Recovery Plan would provide a roadmap for the existing procedures that DTC would follow in the event of a Participant Default and any decision by DTC to cease to act for that Participant.²⁴ The Recovery Plan would provide that the objectives of DTC's actions upon a Participant Default are to (1) minimize losses and market exposure, and (2), to the extent practicable, minimize disturbances to the affected markets. The Recovery Plan would describe tools, actions, and related governance for both market risk monitoring and liquidity risk monitoring through this phase. For example, in connection with managing its market risk during this phase, DTC would, pursuant to its Rules and existing procedures, (1) monitor and assess the adequacy of its Participants Fund and Net Debit Caps; and (2) follow its operational procedures relating to the execution of a liquidation of the Defaulting Participant's Collateral securities through close collaboration and coordination across multiple functions. Management of liquidity risk through this phase would involve ongoing monitoring of, among other things, the adequacy of the Participants Fund and risk controls, and the Recovery Plan would identify certain actions DTC may deploy as it deems

²³ DTC's stress testing practices are described in the Clearing Agency Stress Testing Framework (Market Risk). See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 80485 (April 19, 2017), 82 FR 19131 (April 25, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-005, SR-FICC-2017-009, SR-NSCC-2017-006).

²⁴ See Rule 10 (Discretionary Termination); Rule 11 (Mandatory Termination); Rule 12 (Insolvency), supra note 1.

necessary to mitigate a potential liquidity shortfall, which would include, for example, the reduction of Net Debit Caps of some or all Participants, or seeking additional liquidity resources. The Recovery Plan would state that, throughout this phase, relevant information would be escalated and reported to both internal management committees and the Board Risk Committee.

The Recovery Plan would also identify financial resources available to DTC, pursuant to the Rules, to address losses arising out of a Participant Default. Specifically, Rule 4, as proposed to be amended by the Loss Allocation Filing, would provide that losses remaining after application of the Defaulting Participant's resources be satisfied first by applying a "Corporate Contribution," and then, if necessary, by allocating remaining losses among the membership in accordance with such Rule 4, as amended.²⁵

In order to provide for an effective and timely recovery, the Recovery Plan would describe the period of time that would occur near the end of the Participant Default phase, during which DTC may experience stress events or observe early warning indicators that allow it to evaluate its options and prepare for the recovery phase (referred to in the Plan as the "Recovery Corridor"). The Recovery Plan would then describe the recovery phase of the Crisis Continuum, which would begin on the date that DTC issues the first Loss Allocation Notice of the second loss allocation round with respect to a given "Event Period."²⁶ The recovery phase would describe actions that DTC may take to avoid entering into a wind-down of its business.

DTC expects that significant deterioration of liquidity resources would cause it to enter the Recovery Corridor. As such, the Plan would describe the actions DTC may take aimed at replenishing those resources Recovery Corridor indicators may include, for example, a rapid and

²⁵ See supra note 7. The Loss Allocation Filing proposes to amend Rule 4 to define the amount DTC would contribute to address a loss resulting from either a Participant Default or a non-default event as the "Corporate Contribution." This amount would be 50 percent (50%) of the "General Business Risk Capital Requirement," which is calculated pursuant to the Capital Policy and is an amount sufficient to cover potential general business losses so that DTC can continue operations and services as a going concern if those losses materialize, in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15) under the Act. See also supra note 5; 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(15).

²⁶ The Loss Allocation Filing proposes to amend Rule 4 to introduce the concept of an "Event Period" as the ten (10) Business Days beginning on (i) with respect to a Participant Default, the day on which DTC notifies Participants that it has ceased to act for a Participant, or (ii) with respect to a non-default loss, the day that DTC notifies Participants of the determination by the Board of Directors that there is a non-default loss event, as described in greater detail in that filing. The proposed Rule 4 would define a "round" as a series of loss allocations relating to an Event Period, and would provide that the first Loss Allocation Notice in a first, second, or subsequent round shall expressly state that such notice reflects the beginning of a first, second, or subsequent round. The maximum allocable loss amount of a round is equal to the sum of the "Loss Allocation Caps" (as defined in the proposed Rule 4) of those Participants included in the round. See supra note 7.

material increase in market prices or sequential or simultaneous failures of multiple Participants or Affiliated Families of Participants over a compressed time period. Throughout the Recovery Corridor, DTC would monitor the adequacy of its resources and the expected timing of replenishment of those resources, and would do so through the monitoring of certain corridor indicator metrics.

The majority of the corridor indicators, as identified in the Recovery Plan, relate directly to conditions that may require DTC to adjust its strategy for hedging and liquidating Collateral securities, and any such changes would include an assessment of the status of the corridor indicators. Corridor indicators would include, for example, effectiveness and speed of DTC's efforts to liquidate Collateral securities, and an impediment to the availability of its resources to repay any borrowings due to any Participant default. For each corridor indicator, the Recovery Plan would identify (1) measures of the indicator, (2) evaluations of the status of the indicator, (3) metrics for determining the status of the deterioration or improvement of the indicator, and (4) "Corridor Actions," which are steps that may be taken to improve the status of the indicator,²⁷ as well as management escalations required to authorize those steps. Because DTC has never experienced the default of multiple Participants, it has not, historically, measured the deterioration or improvements metrics of the corridor indicators. As such, these metrics were chosen based on the business judgment of DTC management.

The Recovery Plan would also describe the reporting and escalation of the status of the corridor indicators throughout the Recovery Corridor. Significant deterioration of a corridor indicator, as measured by the metrics set out in the Recovery Plan, would be escalated to the Board. DTC management would review the corridor indicators and the related metrics at least annually, and would modify these metrics as necessary in light of observations from simulations of Participant Defaults and other analyses. Any proposed modifications would be reviewed by the Management Risk Committee and the Board Risk Committee. The Recovery Plan would estimate that DTC may remain in the Recovery Corridor stage between one day and two weeks. This estimate is based on historical data observed in past Participant Default events, the results of simulations of Participant Defaults, and periodic liquidity analyses conducted by DTC. The actual length of a Recovery Corridor would vary based on actual market conditions observed at the time, and DTC would expect the Recovery Corridor to be shorter in market conditions of increased stress.

The Recovery Plan would outline steps by which DTC may allocate its losses, which would occur when and in the order provided in Rule 4, as amended.²⁸ The Recovery Plan would

²⁷ The Corridor Actions that would be identified in the Plan are indicative, but not prescriptive; therefore, if DTC needs to consider alternative actions due to the applicable facts and circumstances, the escalation of those alternative actions would follow the same escalation protocol identified in the Plan for the Corridor Indicator to which the action relates.

²⁸ As these matters are described in greater detail in the Loss Allocation Filing and in the proposed amendments to Rule 4, described therein, reference is made to that filing and the details are not repeated here. See supra note 7.

also identify tools that may be used to address foreseeable shortfalls of DTC's liquidity resources following a Participant Default, and would provide that these tools may be used as appropriate during the Crisis Continuum to address liquidity shortfalls if they arise. The goal in managing DTC's liquidity resources is to maximize resource availability in an evolving stress situation, to maintain flexibility in the order and use of sources of liquidity, and to repay any third party lenders in a timely manner. Liquidity tools include, for example, DTC's committed 364-day credit facility²⁹ and Net Credit Reductions.³⁰ The Recovery Plan would state that the availability and capacity of these liquidity tools cannot be accurately predicted and are dependent on the circumstances of the applicable stress period, including market price volatility, actual or perceived disruptions in financial markets, the costs to DTC of utilizing these tools, and any potential impact on DTC's credit rating.

As stated above, the Recovery Plan would state that DTC will have entered the recovery phase on the date that it issues the first Loss Allocation Notice of the second loss allocation round with respect to a given Event Period. The Recovery Plan would provide that, during the recovery phase, DTC would continue and, as needed, enhance, the monitoring and remedial actions already described in connection with previous phases of the Crisis Continuum, and would remain in the recovery phase until its financial resources are expected to be or are fully replenished, or until the Wind-down Plan is triggered, as described below.

The Recovery Plan would describe governance for the actions and tools that may be employed within each phase of the Crisis Continuum, which would be dictated by the facts and circumstances applicable to the situation being addressed. Such facts and circumstances would be measured by the various indicators and metrics applicable to that phase of the Crisis Continuum, and would follow relevant escalation protocol that would be described in the Recovery Plan. The Recovery Plan would also describe the governance procedures around a decision to cease to act for a Participant, pursuant to the Rules, and around the management and oversight of the subsequent liquidation of Collateral securities. The Recovery Plan would state that, overall, DTC would retain flexibility in accordance with the Rules, its governance structure, and its regulatory oversight, to address a particular situation in order to best protect DTC and its Participants, and to meet the primary objectives, throughout the Crisis Continuum, of minimizing losses and, where consistent and practicable, minimizing disturbance to affected markets.

Non-Default Losses. The Recovery Plan would outline how DTC may address losses that result from events other than a Participant Default. While these matters are addressed in greater detail in other documents, this section of the Plan would provide a roadmap to those documents

²⁹ See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 80605 (May 5, 2017), 82 FR 21850 (May 10, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-802; SR-NSCC-2017-802).

³⁰ DTC may borrow amounts needed to complete settlement from Participants by net credit reductions to their settlement accounts, secured by the Collateral of the defaulting Participant. See Securities Exchange Act Release Nos. 24689 (July 9, 1987), 52 FR 26613 (July 15, 1987) (SR-DTC-87-4); 41879 (September 15, 1999), 64 FR 51360 (September 22, 1999) (SR-DTC-99-15); 42281 (December 28, 1999), 65 FR 1420 (January 10, 2000) (SR-DTC-99-25).

and an outline for DTC's approach to monitoring and managing losses that could result from a non-default event. The Plan would first identify some of the risks DTC faces that could lead to these losses, which include, for example, the business and profit/loss risks of unexpected declines in revenue or growth of expenses; the operational risks of disruptions to systems or processes that could lead to large losses, including those resulting from, for example, a cyber-attack; and custody or investment risks that could lead to financial losses. The Recovery Plan would describe DTC's overall strategy for the management of these risks, which includes a "three lines of defense" approach to risk management that allows for comprehensive management of risk across the organization.³¹ The Recovery Plan would also describe DTC's approach to financial risk and capital management. The Plan would identify key aspects of this approach, including, for example, an annual budget process, business line performance reviews with management, and regular review of capital requirements against LNA. These risk management strategies are collectively intended to allow DTC to effectively identify, monitor, and manage risks of non-default losses.

The Plan would identify the two categories of financial resources DTC maintains to cover losses and expenses arising from non-default risks or events as (1) LNA, maintained, monitored, and managed pursuant to the Capital Policy, which include (a) amounts held in satisfaction of the General Business Risk Capital Requirement,³² (b) the Corporate Contribution,³³ and (c) other amounts held in excess of DTC's capital requirements pursuant to the Capital Policy; and (2) resources available pursuant to the loss allocation provisions of Rule 4.³⁴

The Plan would address the process by which the CFO and the DTCC Treasury group would determine which available LNA resources are most appropriate to cover a loss that is

³¹ This "three lines of defense" approach to risk management includes (1) a first line of defense comprised of the various business lines and functional units that support the products and services offered by DTC; (2) a second line of defense comprised of control functions that support DTC, including the risk management, legal and compliance areas; and (3) a third line of defense, which is performed by an internal audit group. The Clearing Agency Risk Management Framework includes a description of this "three lines of defense" approach to risk management, and addresses how DTC comprehensively manages various risks, including operational, general business, investment, custody, and other risks that arise in or are borne by it. See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 81635 (September 15, 2017), 82 FR 44224 (September 21, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-013; SR-FICC-2017-016; SR-NSCC-2017-012). The Clearing Agency Operational Risk Management Framework describes the manner in which DTC manages operational risks, as defined therein. See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 81745 (September 28, 2017), 82 FR 46332 (October 4, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-014; SR-FICC-2017-017; SR-NSCC-2017-013).

³² See supra note 25.

³³ See supra note 25.

³⁴ See supra note 7.

caused by a non-default event. This determination involves an evaluation of a number of factors, including the current and expected size of the loss, the expected time horizon over when the loss or additional expenses would materialize, the current and projected available LNA, and the likelihood LNA could be successfully replenished pursuant to the Replenishment Plan, if triggered.³⁵ Finally the Plan would discuss how DTC would apply its resources to address losses resulting from a non-default event, including the order of resources it would apply if the loss or liability is expected to exceed DTC's excess LNA amounts, or is large relative thereto, and the Board has declared the event a "Declared Non-Default Loss Event" pursuant to Rule 4.³⁶

The Plan would also describe proposed Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure), which DTC is proposing to adopt in its Rules. This Proposed Rule would provide transparency around how DTC would address extraordinary events that may occur outside its control. Specifically, the Proposed Rule would define a "Market Disruption Event" and the governance around a determination that such an event has occurred. The Proposed Rule would also describe DTC's authority to take actions during the pendency of a Market Disruption Event that it deems appropriate to address such an event and facilitate the continuation of its services, if practicable, as described in greater detail below.

The Plan would describe the interaction between the Proposed Rule and DTC's existing processes and procedures addressing business continuity management and disaster recovery (generally, the "BCM/DR procedures"), making clear that the Proposed Rule is designed to support those BCM/DR procedures and to address circumstances that may be exogenous to DTC and not necessarily addressed by the BCM/DR procedures. Finally, the Plan would describe that, because the operation of the Proposed Rule is specific to each applicable Market Disruption Event, the Proposed Rule does not define a time limit on its application. However, the Plan would note that actions authorized by the Proposed Rule would be limited to the pendency of the applicable Market Disruption Event, as made clear in the Proposed Rule. Overall, the Proposed Rule is designed to mitigate risks caused by Market Disruption Events and, thereby, minimize the risk of financial loss that may result from such events.

Recovery Tool Characteristics. The Recovery Plan would describe DTC's evaluation of the tools identified within the Recovery Plan, and its rationale for concluding that such tools are comprehensive, effective, and transparent, and that such tools provide appropriate incentives to Participants and minimize negative impact on Participants and the financial system, in compliance with guidance published by the Commission in connection with the adoption of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act.³⁷ DTC's analysis and the conclusions set forth in this section of the Recovery Plan are described in greater detail in Item 3(b) of this filing, below.

³⁵ See supra note 5.

³⁶ See supra note 7.

³⁷ Standards for Covered Clearing Agencies, Securities Exchange Act Release No. 78961 (September 28, 2016), 81 FR 70786 (October 13, 2016) (S7-03-14).

DTC Wind-down Plan

The Wind-down Plan would provide the framework and strategy for the orderly wind-down of DTC if the use of the recovery tools described in the Recovery Plan do not successfully return DTC to financial viability. While DTC believes that, given the comprehensive nature of the recovery tools, such event is extremely unlikely, as described in greater detail below, DTC is proposing a wind-down strategy that provides for (1) the transfer of DTC's business, assets, securities inventory, and membership to another legal entity, (2) such transfer being effected in connection with proceedings under Chapter 11 of the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code,³⁸ and (3) after effectuating this transfer, DTC liquidating any remaining assets in an orderly manner in bankruptcy proceedings. DTC believes that the proposed transfer approach to a wind-down would meet its objectives of (1) assuring that DTC's critical services will be available to the market as long as there are Participants in good standing, and (2) minimizing disruption to the operations of Participants and financial markets generally that might be caused by DTC's failure.

In describing the transfer approach to DTC's Wind-down Plan, the Plan would identify the factors that DTC considered in developing this approach, including the fact that DTC does not own material assets that are unrelated to its clearance and settlement activities. As such, a business reorganization or "bail-in" of debt approach would be unlikely to mitigate significant losses. Additionally, DTC's approach was developed in consideration of its critical and unique position in the U.S. markets, which precludes any approach that would cause DTC's critical services to no longer be available.

First, the Wind-down Plan would describe the potential scenarios that could lead to the wind-down of DTC, and the likelihood of such scenarios. The Wind-down Plan would identify the time period leading up to a decision to wind-down DTC as the "Runway Period." This period would follow the implementation of any recovery tools, as it may take a period of time, depending on the severity of the market stress at that time, for these tools to be effective or for DTC to realize a loss sufficient to cause it to be unable to borrow to complete settlement and to repay such borrowings.³⁹ The Plan would identify some of the indicators that DTC has entered this Runway Period, which would include, for example, simultaneous successive Participant Defaults, significant Participant retirements, and DTC's inability to replenish financial resources following the liquidation of Collateral securities.

The trigger for implementing the Wind-down Plan would be a determination by the Board that recovery efforts have not been, or are unlikely to be, successful in returning DTC to viability as a going concern. As described in the Plan, DTC believes this is an appropriate trigger because it is both broad and flexible enough to cover a variety of scenarios, and would

³⁸ 11 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.

³⁹ The Wind-down Plan would state that, given DTC's position as a user-governed financial market utility, it is possible that its Participants might voluntarily elect to provide additional support during the recovery phase leading up to a potential trigger of the Wind-down Plan, but would also make clear that DTC cannot predict the willingness of Participants to do so.

align incentives of DTC and Participants to avoid actions that might undermine DTC's recovery efforts. Additionally, this approach takes into account the characteristics of DTC's recovery tools and enables the Board to consider (1) the presence of indicators of a successful or unsuccessful recovery, and (2) potential for knock-on effects of continued iterative application of DTC's recovery tools.

The Wind-down Plan would describe the general objectives of the transfer strategy, and would address assumptions regarding the transfer of DTC's critical services, business, assets, securities inventory, and membership⁴⁰ to another legal entity that is legally, financially, and operationally able to provide DTC's critical services to entities that wish to continue their membership following the transfer ("Transferee"). The Wind-down Plan would provide that the Transferee would be either (1) a third party legal entity, which may be an existing or newly established legal entity or a bridge entity formed to operate the business on an interim basis to enable the business to be transferred subsequently ("Third Party Transferee"); or (2) an existing, debt-free failover legal entity established ex-ante by DTCC ("Failover Transferee") to be used as an alternative Transferee in the event that no viable or preferable Third Party Transferee timely commits to acquire DTC's business. DTC would seek to identify the proposed Transferee, and negotiate and enter into transfer arrangements during the Runway Period and prior to making any filings under Chapter 11 of the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code.⁴¹ As stated above, the Wind-down Plan would anticipate that the transfer to the Transferee, including the transfer and establishment of the Participant and Pledgee securities accounts on the books of the Transferee, be effected in connection with proceedings under Chapter 11 of the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code, and pursuant to a bankruptcy court order under Section 363 of the Bankruptcy Code, such that the transfer would be free and clear of claims against, and interests in, DTC, except to the extent expressly provided in the court's order.⁴²

In order to effect a timely transfer of its services and minimize the market and operational disruption of such transfer, DTC would expect to transfer all of its critical services and any non-critical services that are ancillary and beneficial to a critical service, or that otherwise have substantial user demand from the continuing membership. Given the transfer of the securities inventory and the establishment on the books of the Transferee Participant and Pledgee securities accounts, DTC anticipates that, following the transfer, it would not itself continue to provide any services, critical or not. Following the transfer, the Wind-down Plan would anticipate that the Transferee and its continuing membership would determine whether to continue to provide any transferred non-critical service on an ongoing basis, or terminate the non-critical service following some transition period. DTC's Wind-down Plan would anticipate that the Transferee would enter into a transition services agreement with DTCC so that DTCC would continue to

⁴⁰ Arrangements with FAST Agents and DRS Agents (each as defined in proposed Rule 32(A)) and with Settling Banks would also be assigned to the Transferee, so that the approach would be transparent to issuers and their transfer agents, as well as to Settling Banks.

⁴¹ 11 U.S.C. 1101 *et seq.*

⁴² *See id.* at 363.

provide the shared services it currently provides to DTC, including staffing, infrastructure and operational support. The Wind-down Plan would also anticipate the assignment of DTC's "inbound" link arrangements to the Transferee. The Wind-down Plan would provide that in the case of "outbound" links, DTC would seek to have the linked FMIs agree, at a minimum, to accept the Transferee as a link party for a transition period.⁴³

The Wind-down Plan would provide that, following the effectiveness of the transfer to the Transferee, the wind-down of DTC would involve addressing any residual claims against DTC through the bankruptcy process and liquidating the legal entity. As such, and as stated above, the Wind-down Plan does not contemplate DTC continuing to provide services in any capacity following the transfer time, and any services not transferred would be terminated.

The Wind-down Plan would also identify the key dependencies for the effectiveness of the transfer, which include regulatory approvals that would permit the Transferee to be legally qualified to provide the transferred services from and after the transfer, and approval by the applicable bankruptcy court of, among other things, the proposed sale, assignments, and transfers to the Transferee.

The Wind-down Plan would address governance matters related to the execution of the transfer of DTC's business and its wind-down. The Wind-down Plan would address the duties of the Board to execute the wind-down of DTC in conformity with (1) the Rules, (2) the Board's fiduciary duties, which mandate that it exercise reasonable business judgment in performing these duties, and (3) DTC's regulatory obligations under the Act as a registered clearing agency. The Wind-down Plan would also identify certain factors the Board may consider in making these decisions, which would include, for example, whether DTC could safely stabilize the business and protect its value without seeking bankruptcy protection, and DTC's ability to continue to meet its regulatory requirements.

The Wind-down Plan would describe (1) actions DTC or DTCC may take to prepare for wind-down in the period before DTC experiences any financial distress, (2) actions DTC would take both during the recovery phase and the Runway Period to prepare for the execution of the Wind-down Plan, and (3) actions DTC would take upon commencement of bankruptcy proceedings to effectuate the Wind-down Plan.

Finally, the Wind-down Plan would include an analysis of the estimated time and costs to effectuate the plan, and would provide that this estimate be reviewed and approved by the Board annually. In order to estimate the length of time it might take to achieve a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC's critical operations, as contemplated by the R&W Plan, the Wind-down

⁴³ The proposed transfer arrangements outlined in the Wind-down Plan do not contemplate the transfer of any credit or funding agreements, which are generally not assignable by DTC. However, to the extent the Transferee adopts rules substantially identical to those DTC has in effect prior to the transfer, it would have the benefit of any rules-based liquidity funding. The Wind-down Plan contemplates that no Participants Fund would be transferred to the Transferee, as it is not held in a bankruptcy remote manner and it is the primary prefunded liquidity resource to be accessed in the recovery phase.

Plan would include an analysis of the possible sequencing and length of time it might take to complete an orderly wind-down and transfer of critical operations, as described in earlier sections of the R&W Plan. The Wind-down Plan would also include in this analysis consideration of other factors, including the time it might take to complete any further attempts at recovery under the Recovery Plan. The Wind-down Plan would then multiply this estimated length of time by DTC's average monthly operating expenses, including adjustments to account for changes to DTC's profit and expense profile during these circumstances, over the previous twelve months to determine the amount of LNA that it should hold to achieve a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC's critical operations. The estimated wind-down costs would constitute the "Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement" under the Capital Policy.⁴⁴ Under that policy, the General Business Risk Capital Requirement is calculated as the greatest of three estimated amounts, one of which is this Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement.⁴⁵

The R&W Plan is designed as a roadmap, and the types of actions that may be taken both leading up to and in connection with implementation of the Wind-down Plan would be primarily addressed in other supporting documentation referred to therein.

The Wind-down Plan would address proposed Rule 32(A) (Wind-down of the Corporation and proposed Rule 38 (Force Majeure and Market Disruption)), which would be adopted to facilitate the implementation of the Wind-down Plan, as discussed below.

Proposed Rules

In connection with the adoption of the R&W Plan, DTC is proposing to adopt the Proposed Rules, each described below. The Proposed Rules would facilitate the execution of the R&W Plan and would provide Participants with transparency as to critical aspects of the Plan, particularly as they relate to the rights and responsibilities of both DTC and its Participants. The Proposed Rules also provide a legal basis to these aspects of the Plan.

Rule 32(A) (Wind-down of the Corporation)

The proposed Rule 32(A) ("Wind-down Rule") would be adopted to facilitate the execution of the Wind-down Plan. The Wind-down Rule would include a proposed set of defined terms that would be applicable only to the provisions of this Proposed Rule. The Wind-down Rule would make clear that a wind-down of DTC's business would occur (1) after a decision is made by the Board, and (2) in connection with the transfer of DTC's services to a Transferee, as described therein. Generally, the proposed Wind-down Rule is designed to create clear mechanisms for the transfer of Eligible Participants and Pledgees, Settling Banks, DRS Agents, and FAST Agents (as these terms would be defined in the Wind-down Rule), and DTC's inventory of financial assets in order to provide for continued access to critical services and to minimize disruption to the markets in the event the Wind-down Plan is initiated.

⁴⁴ See supra note 5.

⁴⁵ See supra note 5.

Wind-down Trigger. First, the Proposed Rule would make clear that the Board is responsible for initiating the Wind-down Plan, and would identify the criteria the Board would consider when making this determination. As provided for in the Wind-down Plan and in the proposed Wind-down Rule, the Board would initiate the Plan if, in the exercise of its business judgment and subject to its fiduciary duties, it has determined that the execution of the Recovery Plan has not or is not likely to restore DTC to viability as a going concern, and the implementation of the Wind-down Plan, including the transfer of DTC's business, is in the best interests of DTC, its Participants and Pledgees, its shareholders and creditors, and the U.S. financial markets.

Identification of Critical Services; Designation of Dates and Times for Specific Actions. The Proposed Rule would provide that, upon making a determination to initiate the Wind-down Plan, the Board would identify the critical and non-critical services that would be transferred to the Transferee at the Transfer Time (as defined below and in the Proposed Rule), as well as any non-critical services that would not be transferred to the Transferee. The proposed Wind-down Rule would establish that any services transferred to the Transferee will only be provided by the Transferee as of the Transfer Time, and that any non-critical services that are not transferred to the Transferee would be terminated at the Transfer Time. The Proposed Rule would also provide that the Board would establish (1) an effective time for the transfer of DTC's business to a Transferee ("Transfer Time"), and (2) the last day that instructions in respect of securities and other financial products may be effectuated through the facilities of DTC (the "Last Activity Date"). The Proposed Rule would make clear that DTC would not accept any transactions for settlement after the Last Activity Date. Any transactions to be settled after the Transfer Time would be required to be submitted to the Transferee, and would not be DTC's responsibility.

Notice Provisions. The proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that, upon a decision to implement the Wind-down Plan, DTC would provide its Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, Settling Banks and regulators with a notice that includes material information relating to the Wind-down Plan and the anticipated transfer of DTC's Participants and business, including, for example, (1) a brief statement of the reasons for the decision to implement the Wind-down Plan; (2) identification of the Transferee and information regarding the transaction by which the transfer of DTC's business would be effected; (3) the Transfer Time and Last Activity Date; and (4) identification of Participants and the critical and non-critical services that would be transferred to the Transferee at the Transfer Time, as well as those Non-Eligible Participants (as defined below and in the Proposed Rule) and any non-critical services that would not be included in the transfer. DTC would also make available the rules and procedures and membership agreements of the Transferee.

Transfer of Membership. The proposed Wind-down Rule would address the expected transfer of DTC's membership to the Transferee, which DTC would seek to effectuate by entering into an arrangement with a Failover Transferee, or by using commercially reasonable efforts to enter into such an arrangement with a Third Party Transferee. Thus, under the proposal, in connection with the implementation of the Wind-down Plan and with no further action required by any party:

(1) each Eligible Participant would become (i) a Participant of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Participants agreement with the Transferee;

(2) each Participant that is delinquent in the performance of any obligation to DTC or that has provided notice of its election to withdraw as a Participant (a “Non-Eligible Participant”) as of the Transfer Time would become (i) the holder of a transition period securities account maintained by the Transferee on its books (“Transition Period Securities Account”) and (ii) a party to a Transition Period Securities Account agreement of the Transferee;

(3) each Pledgee would become (i) a Pledgee of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Pledgee agreement with the Transferee;

(4) each DRS Agent would become (i) a DRS Agent of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a DRS Agent agreement with the Transferee;

(5) each FAST Agent would become (i) a FAST Agent of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a FAST Agent agreement with the Transferee; and

(6) each Settling Bank for Participants and Pledgees would become (i) a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledgees of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Settling Bank Agreement with the Transferee.

Further, the Proposed Rule would make clear that it would not prohibit (1) Non-Eligible Participants from applying for membership with the Transferee, (2) Non-Eligible Participants that have become holders of Transition Period Securities Accounts (“Transition Period Securities Account Holders”) of the Transferee from withdrawing as a Transition Period Securities Account Holder from the Transferee, subject to the rules and procedures of the Transferee, and (3) Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, and Settling Banks that would be transferred to the Transferee from withdrawing from membership with the Transferee, subject to the rules and procedures of the Transferee. Under the Proposed Rule, Non-Eligible Participants that have become Transition Period Securities Account Holders of the Transferee shall have the rights and be subject to the obligations of Transition Period Securities Account Holders set forth in special provisions of the rules and procedures of the Transferee applicable to such Transition Period Securities Account Holder. Specifically, Non-Eligible Participants that become Transition Period Securities Account Holders must, within the Transition Period (as defined in the Proposed Rule), instruct the Transferee to transfer the financial assets credited to its Transition Period Securities Account (i) to a Participant of the Transferee through the facilities of the Transferee or (ii) to a recipient outside the facilities of the Transferee, and no additional financial assets may be delivered versus payment to a Transition Period Securities Account during the Transition Period.

Transfer of Inventory of Financial Assets. The proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that DTC would enter into arrangements with a Failover Transferee, or would use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Third Party Transferee, providing that, in either case, at Transfer Time:

(1) DTC would transfer to the Transferee (i) its rights with respect to its nominee Cede & Co. (“Cede”) (and thereby its rights with respect to the financial assets owned of record by Cede), (ii) the financial assets held by it at the FRBNY, (iii) the financial assets held by it at other CSDs, (iv) the financial assets held in custody for it with FAST Agents, (v) the

financial assets held in custody for it with other custodians and (vi) the financial assets it holds in physical custody.

(2) The Transferee would establish security entitlements on its books for Eligible Participants of DTC that become Participants of the Transferee that replicate the security entitlements that DTC maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time for such Eligible Participants, and DTC would simultaneously eliminate such security entitlements from its books.

(3) The Transferee would establish security entitlements on its books for Non-Eligible Participants of DTC that become Transition Period Securities Account Holders of the Transferee that replicate the security entitlements that DTC maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time for such Non-Eligible Participants, and DTC would simultaneously eliminate such security entitlements from its books.

(4) The Transferee would establish pledges on its books in favor of Pledges that become Pledges of the Transferee that replicate the pledges that DTC maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time in favor of such Pledges, and DTC shall simultaneously eliminate such pledges from its books.

Comparability Period. The proposed automatic mechanism for the transfer of DTC's membership is intended to provide DTC's membership with continuous access to critical services in the event of DTC's wind-down, and to facilitate the continued prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions. Further to this goal, the proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that DTC would enter into arrangements with a Failover Transferee, or would use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Third Party Transferee, providing that, in either case, with respect to the critical services and any non-critical services that are transferred from DTC to the Transferee, for at least a period of time to be agreed upon ("Comparability Period"), the business transferred from DTC to the Transferee would be operated in a manner that is comparable to the manner in which the business was previously operated by DTC. Specifically, the proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that: (1) the rules of the Transferee and terms of Participant, Pledgee, DRS Agent, FAST Agent and Settling Bank agreements would be comparable in substance and effect to the analogous Rules and agreements of DTC, (2) the rights and obligations of any Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, and Settling Banks that are transferred to the Transferee would be comparable in substance and effect to their rights and obligations as to DTC, and (3) the Transferee would operate the transferred business and provide any services that are transferred in a comparable manner to which such services were provided by DTC.

The purpose of these provisions and the intended effect of the proposed Wind-down Rule is to facilitate a smooth transition of DTC's business to a Transferee and to provide that, for at least the Comparability Period, the Transferee (1) would operate the transferred business in a manner that is comparable in substance and effect to the manner in which the business was operated by DTC, and (2) would not require sudden and disruptive changes in the systems, operations and business practices of the new Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, and Settling Banks of the Transferee.

Subordination of Claims Provisions and Miscellaneous Matters. The proposed Wind-down Rule would also include a provision addressing the subordination of unsecured claims against DTC of its Participants who fail to participate in DTC’s recovery efforts (*i.e.*, such firms are delinquent in their obligations to DTC or elect to retire from DTC in order to minimize their obligations with respect to the allocation of losses, pursuant to the Rules). This provision is designed to incentivize Participants to participate in DTC’s recovery efforts.⁴⁶

The proposed Wind-down Rule would address other ex-ante matters, including provisions providing that its Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks (1) will assist and cooperate with DTC to effectuate the transfer of DTC’s business to a Transferee, (2) consent to the provisions of the rule, and (3) grant DTC power of attorney to execute and deliver on their behalf documents and instruments that may be requested by the Transferee. Finally, the Proposed Rule would include a limitation of liability for any actions taken or omitted to be taken by DTC pursuant to the Proposed Rule. The purpose of the limitation of liability is to facilitate and protect DTC’s ability to act expeditiously in response to extraordinary events. As noted, such limitation of liability would be available only following triggering of the Wind-down Plan. In addition, and as a separate matter, the limitation of liability provides Participants with transparency for the unlikely situation when those extraordinary events could occur, as well supporting the legal framework within which DTC would take such actions. These provisions, collectively, are designed to enable DTC to take such acts as the Board determines necessary to effectuate an orderly transfer and wind-down of its business should recovery efforts prove unsuccessful.

Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure)

The proposed Rule 38 (“Force Majeure Rule”) would address DTC’s authority to take certain actions upon the occurrence, and during the pendency, of a “Market Disruption Event,” as defined therein. The Proposed Rule is designed to clarify DTC’s ability to take actions to address extraordinary events outside of the control of DTC and of its membership, and to mitigate the effect of such events by facilitating the continuity of services (or, if deemed necessary, the temporary suspension of services). To that end, under the proposed Force Majeure Rule, DTC would be entitled, during the pendency of a Market Disruption Event, to (1) suspend the provision of any or all services, and (2) take, or refrain from taking, or require its Participants and Pledgees to take, or refrain from taking, any actions it considers appropriate to address, alleviate, or mitigate the event and facilitate the continuation of DTC’s services as may be practicable.

The proposed Force Majeure Rule would identify the events or circumstances that would be considered a “Market Disruption Event,” including, for example, events that lead to the

⁴⁶ Nothing in the proposed Wind-down Rule would seek to prevent a Participant that retired its membership at DTC from applying for membership with the Transferee. Once its DTC membership is terminated, however, such firm would not be able to benefit from the membership assignment that would be effected by this proposed Wind-down Rule, and it would have to apply for membership directly with the Transferee, subject to its membership application and review process.

suspension or limitation of trading or banking in the markets in which DTC operates, or the unavailability or failure of any material payment, bank transfer, wire or securities settlement systems. The proposed Force Majeure Rule would define the governance procedures for how DTC would determine whether, and how, to implement the provisions of the rule. A determination that a Market Disruption Event has occurred would generally be made by the Board, but the Proposed Rule would provide for limited, interim delegation of authority to a specified officer or management committee if the Board would not be able to take timely action. In the event such delegated authority is exercised, the proposed Force Majeure Rule would require that the Board be convened as promptly as practicable, no later than five Business Days after such determination has been made, to ratify, modify, or rescind the action. The proposed Force Majeure Rule would also provide for prompt notification to the Commission, and advance consultation with Commission staff, when practicable, including notification when an event is no longer continuing and the relevant actions are terminated. The Proposed Rule would require Participants and Pledges to notify DTC immediately upon becoming aware of a Market Disruption Event, and, likewise, would require DTC to notify its Participants and Pledges if it has triggered the Proposed Rule and of actions taken or intended to be taken thereunder.

Finally, the Proposed Rule would address other related matters, including a limitation of liability for any failure or delay in performance, in whole or in part, arising out of the Market Disruption Event. The purpose of the limitation of liability would be similar to the purpose of the analogous provision in the proposed Wind-down Rule, which is to facilitate and protect DTC's ability to act expeditiously in response to extraordinary events.

Expected Effect on and Management of Risk

DTC believes the proposal to adopt the R&W Plan and the Proposed Rules would enable it to better manage its risks. As described above, the Recovery Plan would identify the recovery tools and the risk management activities that DTC may use to address risks of uncovered losses or shortfalls resulting from a Participant Default and losses arising from non-default events. By creating a framework for its management of risks across an evolving stress scenario and providing a roadmap for actions it may employ to monitor and, as needed, stabilize its financial condition, the Recovery Plan would strengthen DTC's ability to manage risk. The Wind-down Plan would also enable DTC to better manage its risks by establishing the strategy and framework for its orderly wind-down and the transfer of DTC's business, including the transfer of the securities inventory and establishment of the Participant and Pledgee securities accounts on the books of the transferee, when the Wind-down Plan is triggered. By creating clear mechanisms for the transfer of DTC's membership and business, the Wind-down Plan would facilitate continued access to DTC's critical services and minimize market impact of the transfer and enable DTC to better manage risks related to the wind-down of DTC.

DTC believes the Proposed Rules would enable it to better manage its risks by facilitating, and providing a legal basis for, the implementation of critical aspects of the R&W Plan. The Proposed Rules would provide Participants with transparency around those provisions of the R&W Plan that relate to their and DTC's rights, responsibilities and obligations. Therefore, DTC believes the Proposed Rules would enable it to better manage its risks by providing this transparency and creating some certainty, to the extent practicable, around the

occurrence of a Market Disruption Event (as such term is defined in the Proposed Rule), and around the implementation of the Wind-down Plan.

Consistency with the Clearing Supervision Act

The stated purpose of Title VIII of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, entitled the Payment, Clearing, and Settlement Supervision Act of 2010 (“Clearing Supervision Act”) is to mitigate systemic risk in the financial system and promote financial stability by, among other things, promoting uniform risk management standards for systemically important financial market utilities and strengthening the liquidity of systemically important financial market utilities.⁴⁷ Section 805(a)(2) of the Clearing Supervision Act⁴⁸ also authorizes the Commission to prescribe risk management standards for the payment, clearing, and settlement activities of designated clearing entities, like DTC, for which the Commission is the supervisory agency. Section 805(b) of the Clearing Supervision Act⁴⁹ states that the objectives and principles for risk management standards prescribed under Section 805(a) shall be to promote robust risk management, promote safety and soundness, reduce systemic risks, and support the stability of the broader financial system.

DTC believes that the proposed change is consistent with Section 805(b) of the Clearing Supervision Act because it is designed to address each of these objectives. The Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule would promote robust risk management and would reduce systemic risks by providing DTC with a roadmap for actions it may employ to monitor and manage its risks, and, as needed, to stabilize its financial condition in the event those risks materialize. Further, the Recovery Plan would identify the triggers of recovery tools, but would not provide that those triggers necessitate the use of that tool. Instead, the Recovery Plan would provide that the triggers of these tools lead to escalation to an appropriate management body, which would have authority and flexibility to respond appropriately to the situation. Essentially, the Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule are designed to minimize losses to both DTC and its Participants by giving DTC the ability to determine the most appropriate way to address each stress situation. This approach would allow for proper evaluation of the situation and the possible impacts of the use of a recovery tool in order to minimize the negative effects of the stress situation, and would reduce systemic risks related to the implementation of the Recovery Plan and the underlying recovery tools.

The Wind-down Plan and the proposed Wind-down Rule, which would facilitate the implementation of the Wind-down Plan, would promote safety and soundness and would support the stability of the broader financial system because they would establish a framework for the orderly wind-down of DTC’s business and would set forth clear mechanics for the transfer of its critical services and membership as well as clear provisions concerning the transfer of the securities inventory that DTC holds in fungible bulk on behalf of its Participants. By designing the Wind-down Plan and the proposed Wind-down Rule to provide for the continued access to

⁴⁷ 12 U.S.C. 5461(b).

⁴⁸ Id. at 5464(a)(2).

⁴⁹ Id. at 5464(b).

DTC's critical services and membership, DTC believes they would promote safety and soundness and would support stability in the broader financial system in the event the Wind-down Plan is implemented.

By assisting DTC to promote robust risk management, promote safety and soundness, reduce systemic risks, and support the stability of the broader financial system, as described above, DTC believes the proposal is consistent with Section 805(b) of the Clearing Supervision Act.⁵⁰

DTC also believes that the proposal is consistent with the requirements of the Act and the rules and regulations thereunder applicable to a registered clearing agency. In particular, DTC believes that the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with Section 17A(b)(3)(F) of the Act,⁵¹ the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act,⁵² and the R&W Plan is consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii) under the Act,⁵³ for the reasons described below.

Section 17A(b)(3)(F) of the Act requires, in part, that the rules of DTC be designed to promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions, and to assure the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible.⁵⁴ The Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule would promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions by providing DTC with a roadmap for actions it may employ to mitigate losses, and monitor and, as needed, stabilize, its financial condition, which would allow it to continue its critical clearance and settlement services in stress situations. Further, as described above, the Recovery Plan is designed to identify the actions and tools DTC may use to address and minimize losses to both DTC and its Participants. The Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule would provide DTC's management and the Board with guidance in this regard by identifying the indicators and governance around the use and application of such tools to enable them to address stress situations in a manner most appropriate for the circumstances. Therefore, the Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule would also contribute to the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible by enabling actions that would address and minimize losses.

The Wind-down Plan and the proposed Wind-down Rule, which would facilitate the implementation of the Wind-down Plan, would also promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions and assure the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible. The Wind-down Plan

⁵⁰ Id.

⁵¹ 15 U.S.C. 78q-1(b)(3)(F).

⁵² 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

⁵³ Id. at 240.17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii).

⁵⁴ 15 U.S.C. 78q-1(b)(3)(F).

and the proposed Wind-down Rule would collectively establish a framework for the transfer and orderly wind-down of DTC's business. These proposals would establish clear mechanisms for the transfer of DTC's critical services and membership as well as clear provision for the transfer of the securities inventory it holds in fungible bulk for Participants. By doing so, the Wind-down Plan and these Proposed Rules are designed to facilitate the continuity of DTC's critical services and enable its Participants and Pledges to maintain access to DTC's services through the transfer of its membership in the event DTC defaults or the Wind-down Plan is triggered by the Board. Therefore, by facilitating the continuity of DTC's critical clearance and settlement services, DTC believes the proposals would promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions. Further, by creating a framework for the transfer and orderly wind-down of DTC's business, DTC believes the proposals would enhance the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible.

Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with the requirements of Section 17A(b)(3)(F) of the Act.⁵⁵

Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act requires DTC to establish, implement, maintain and enforce written policies and procedures reasonably designed to maintain a sound risk management framework for comprehensively managing legal, credit, liquidity, operational, general business, investment, custody, and other risks that arise in or are borne by the covered clearing agency, which includes plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of the covered clearing agency necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses.⁵⁶ The R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are designed to meet the requirements of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

The R&W Plan would be maintained by DTC in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) in that it provides plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of DTC necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses, as described above.⁵⁷ Specifically, the Recovery Plan would define the risk management activities, stress conditions and indicators, and tools that DTC may use to address stress scenarios that could eventually prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. Through the framework of the Crisis Continuum, the Recovery Plan would address measures that DTC may take to address risks of credit losses and liquidity shortfalls, and other losses that could arise from a Participant Default. The Recovery Plan would also address the management of general business risks and other non-default risks that could lead to losses.

The Wind-down Plan would be triggered by a determination by the Board that recovery efforts have not been, or are unlikely to be, successful in returning DTC to viability as a going concern. Once triggered, the Wind-down Plan would set forth clear mechanisms for the transfer of DTC's membership and business, and would be designed to facilitate continued access to

⁵⁵ Id.

⁵⁶ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

⁵⁷ Id.

DTC's critical services and to minimize market impact of the transfer. By establishing the framework and strategy for the execution of the transfer and wind-down of DTC in order to facilitate continuous access to DTC's critical services, the Wind-down Plan establishes a plan for the orderly wind-down of DTC. Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan would provide plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of the covered clearing agency necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses, and, as such, meets the requirements of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁵⁸

As described in greater detail above, the Proposed Rules are designed to facilitate the execution of the R&W Plan, provide Participants with transparency regarding the material provisions of the Plan, and provide DTC with a legal basis for implementation of those provisions. As such, DTC also believes the Proposed Rules meet the requirements of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁵⁹

DTC has evaluated the recovery tools that would be identified in the Recovery Plan and has determined that these tools are comprehensive, effective, and transparent, and that such tools provide appropriate incentives to DTC's Participants to manage the risks they present. The recovery tools, as outlined in the Recovery Plan and in the proposed Force Majeure Rule, provide DTC with a comprehensive set of options to address its material risks and support the resiliency of its critical services under a range of stress scenarios. DTC also believes the recovery tools are effective, as DTC has both legal basis and operational capability to execute these tools in a timely and reliable manner. Many of the recovery tools are provided for in the Rules; Participants are bound by the Rules through their Participants Agreements with DTC, and the Rules are adopted pursuant to a framework established by Rule 19b-4 under the Act,⁶⁰ providing a legal basis for the recovery tools found therein. Other recovery tools have legal basis in contractual arrangements to which DTC is a party, as described above. Further, as many of the tools are embedded in DTC's ongoing risk management practices or are embedded into its predefined default-management procedures, DTC is able to execute these tools, in most cases, when needed and without material operational or organizational delay.

The majority of the recovery tools are also transparent, as they are or are proposed to be included in the Rules, which are publicly available. DTC believes the recovery tools also provide appropriate incentives to its owners and Participants, as they are designed to control the amount of risk they present to DTC's clearance and settlement system. Finally, DTC's Recovery Plan provides for a continuous evaluation of the systemic consequences of executing its recovery tools, with the goal of minimizing their negative impact. The Recovery Plan would outline various indicators over a timeline of increasing stress, the Crisis Continuum, with escalation triggers to DTC management or the Board, as appropriate. This approach would allow for timely evaluation of the situation and the possible impacts of the use of a recovery tool in order to minimize the negative effects of the stress scenario. Therefore, DTC believes that the recovery

⁵⁸ Id.

⁵⁹ Id.

⁶⁰ Id. at 240.19b-4.

tools that would be identified and described in its Recovery Plan, including the authority provided to it in the proposed Force Majeure Rule, would meet the criteria identified within guidance published by the Commission in connection with the adoption of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁶¹

Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁶²

Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii) under the Act requires DTC to establish, implement, maintain and enforce written policies and procedures reasonably designed to identify, monitor, and manage its general business risk and hold sufficient LNA to cover potential general business losses so that DTC can continue operations and services as a going concern if those losses materialize, including by holding LNA equal to the greater of either (x) six months of the covered clearing agency's current operating expenses, or (y) the amount determined by the board of directors to be sufficient to ensure a recovery or orderly wind-down of critical operations and services of the covered clearing agency.⁶³ While the Capital Policy addresses how DTC holds LNA in compliance with these requirements, the Wind-down Plan would include an analysis that would estimate the amount of time and the costs to achieve a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC's critical operations and services, and would provide that the Board review and approve this analysis and estimation annually. The Wind-down Plan would also provide that the estimate would be the "Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement" under the Capital Policy. Under that policy, the General Business Risk Capital Requirement, which is the sufficient amount of LNA that DTC should hold to cover potential general business losses so that it can continue operations and services as a going concern if those losses materialize, is calculated as the greatest of three estimated amounts, one of which is this Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement. Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan, as it interrelates with the Capital Policy, is consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii).⁶⁴

11. Exhibits

Exhibit 1 Not applicable.

Exhibit 1A Notice of proposal for publication in the Federal Register.

Exhibit 2 Not applicable.

Exhibit 3 Not applicable.

⁶¹ Supra note 37.

⁶² 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

⁶³ Id. at 240.17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii).

⁶⁴ Id.

Exhibit 4 R&W Plan (marked). **Omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment of this Exhibit 4 pursuant to 17 CFR 240.24b-2 being requested.**

Exhibit 5a R&W Plan (revised). **Omitted and filed separately with the Commission. Confidential treatment of this Exhibit 5a pursuant to 17 CFR 240.24b-2 being requested.**

Exhibit 5b Proposed changes to the Rules.

SR-DTC-2017-803 Amendment No. 1
EXHIBIT 1A

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
(Release No. 34-[_____]; File No. SR-DTC-2017-803)

[DATE]

Self-Regulatory Organizations; The Depository Trust Company; Notice of Filing of Amendment No. 1 to Advance Notice to Adopt the Recovery & Wind-down Plan and Related Rules

On December 18, 2017, The Depository Trust Company (“DTC”) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (“Commission”) an advance notice to adopt the Recovery & Wind-down Plan and related rules (SR-DTC-2017-803) (“Advance Notice”), pursuant to Section 806(e)(1) of the Payment, Clearing, and Settlement Supervision Act of 2010 (“Clearing Supervision Act”)¹ and Rule 19b-4(n)(1)(i) of the Act.² On January 30, 2018, the Commission published in the Federal Register notices of filing of the

¹ 12 U.S.C. 5465(e)(1).

² 17 CFR 240.19b-4(n)(1)(i). On December 18, 2017, DTC filed this proposal as a proposed rule change (SR-DTC-2017-021) with the Commission pursuant to Section 19(b)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (“Act”), 15 U.S.C. 78s(b)(1), and Rule 19b-4 thereunder, 17 CFR 240.19b-4 (“Proposed Rule Change”). The Proposed Rule Change was published in the Federal Register on January 8, 2018. See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 82432 (January 2, 2018), 83 FR 884 (January 8, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-021). On February 8, 2018, the Commission designated a longer period within which to approve, disapprove, or institute proceedings to determine whether to approve or disapprove the Proposed Rule Change. See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 82669 (February 8, 2018), 83 FR 6653 (February 14, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-021). On March 20, 2018, the Commission instituted proceedings pursuant to Section 19(b)(2)(B) of the Act (15 U.S.C. 78s(b)(2)(B)) to determine whether to approve or disapprove the Proposed Rule Change. See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 82912 (March 20, 2018), 83 FR 12999 (March 26, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-021). The Commission did not receive any comments on the Proposed Rule Change.

Advance Notice.³ These notices also extended the review period for the Advance Notice pursuant to Section 806(e)(1)(H) of the Clearing Supervision Act.⁴ On April 10, 2018, the Commission required further information for consideration of the Advance Notice, pursuant to Section 806(e)(1)(D) of the Clearing Supervision Act, which provided the Commission with a renewed 60-day review period beginning on the date that the information requested is received by the Commission.⁵ As of the date of this release, the Commission has not yet received the requested information.

Notice is hereby given that on June __, 2018, DTC filed with the Commission and amendment to the Advance Notice as described in Items I, II and III below, which Items have been prepared by the clearing agency. The Commission is publishing this notice to solicit comments on the Advance Notice from interested persons.

I. Clearing Agency's Statement of the Terms of Substance of the Advance Notice

The Advance Notice of DTC proposes to (1) adopt the Recovery & Wind-down Plan of DTC ("R&W Plan" or "Plan"); and (2) amend the Rules, By-Laws and Organization Certificate of DTC ("Rules")⁶ in order to adopt Rule 32(A) (Wind-down of the Corporation) and Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure) (each proposed Rule 32(A) and proposed Rule 38, a "Proposed Rule" and, collectively, the "Proposed Rules").

³ See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 82581 (January 24, 2018), 83 FR 4327 (January 30, 2018) (SR-NSCC-2017-805).

⁴ 12 U.S.C. 5465(e)(1)(H).

⁵ 12 U.S.C. 5465(e)(1)(D).

⁶ Capitalized terms used herein and not otherwise defined herein are defined in the Rules, available at www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/rules/DTC_rules.pdf.

The R&W Plan would be maintained by DTC in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act by providing plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of DTC necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses, as described below.⁷ The Proposed Rules are designed to (1) facilitate the implementation of the R&W Plan when necessary and, in particular, allow DTC to effectuate its strategy for winding down and transferring its business; (2) provide Participants with transparency around critical provisions of the R&W Plan that relate to their rights, responsibilities and obligations; and (3) provide DTC with the legal basis to implement those provisions of the R&W Plan when necessary, as described below.

II. Clearing Agency's Statement of the Purpose of, and Statutory Basis for, the Advance Notice

In its filing with the Commission, the clearing agency included statements concerning the purpose of and basis for the Advance Notice and discussed any comments it received on the Advance Notice. The text of these statements may be examined at the places specified in Item IV below. The clearing agency has prepared summaries, set forth in sections A and B below, of the most significant aspects of such statements.

(A) Clearing Agency's Statement on Comments on the Advance Notice Received from Members, Participants, or Others

While DTC has not solicited or received any written comments relating to this proposal, DTC has conducted outreach to its Members in order to provide them with notice of the proposal. DTC will notify the Commission of any written comments received by DTC.

⁷ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

(B) Advance Notice Filed Pursuant to Section 806(e) of the Clearing Supervision Act

Description of Amendment No. 1

This filing constitutes Amendment No. 1 (“Amendment”) to the Advance Notice (also referred to below as the “Original Filing”) previously filed by DTC.⁸ DTC is amending the proposed R&W Plan and the Original Filing in order to clarify certain matters and make minor technical and conforming changes to the R&W Plan, as described below and as marked on Exhibit 4 hereto. To the extent such changes to the Plan require changes to the Original Filing, the information provided under “*Description of Proposed Changes*” in the Original Filing has been amended and is restated in its entirety below. Other sections of the Original Filing are unchanged and are restated in their entirety for convenience.

First, this Amendment would clarify the use in the Plan of the term “Participant Default Losses.” This Amendment would also clarify the actions and tools available in the third phase of the Crisis Continuum, which is referred to as the “Participant Default phase.” This Amendment would also make conforming changes as necessary to reflect the use of these terms.

Second, this Amendment would clarify that actions and tools described in the Plan that are available in one phase of the Crisis Continuum may be used in subsequent phases of the Crisis Continuum, when appropriate to address the applicable situation. This Amendment would also clarify that allocation of losses resulting from a Participant Default would be applied when provide for in, and in accordance with, Rule 4.

⁸ See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 82579 (January 24, 2018), 83 FR 4310 (January 30, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-803).

Third, this Amendment would clarify that the Recovery Corridor (as defined therein) is not a “sub-phase” of the recovery phase. Rather, the Recovery Corridor is a period of time that would occur toward the end of the Participant Default phase, when indicators are that DTC may transition into the recovery phase. Thus, the Recovery Corridor precedes the recovery phase.

Fourth, this Amendment would make revisions to address the allocation of losses resulting from a Participant Default in order to more closely conform such statements to the changes proposed by the Loss Allocation Filing, as defined below.

Fifth, this Amendment would clarify the notifications that DTC would be required to make under the Proposed Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure).

Finally, this Amendment would make minor, technical and conforming revisions to correct typographical errors and to simplify descriptions. For example, such revisions would use lower case for terms that are not defined therein, and would use upper case for terms that are defined. The Amendment would also simplify certain descriptions by removing extraneous words and statements that are repetitive. These minor, technical revisions would not alter the substance of the proposal.

Description of Proposed Changes

DTC is proposing to adopt the R&W Plan to be used by the Board and management in the event DTC encounters scenarios that could potentially prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. The R&W Plan would identify (i) the recovery tools available to DTC to address the risks of (a) uncovered losses or liquidity shortfalls resulting from the default of one or more of its Participants, and (b) losses arising from non-default events, such as damage to its physical assets, a

cyber-attack, or custody and investment losses, and (ii) the strategy for implementation of such tools. The R&W Plan would also establish the strategy and framework for the orderly wind-down of DTC and the transfer of its business in the remote event the implementation of the available recovery tools does not successfully return DTC to financial viability.

As discussed in greater detail below, the R&W Plan would provide, among other matters, (i) an overview of the business of DTC and its parent, The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation (“DTCC”); (ii) an analysis of DTC’s intercompany arrangements and critical links to other financial market infrastructures (“FMIs”); (iii) a description of DTC’s services, and the criteria used to determine which services are considered critical; (iv) a description of the DTC and DTCC governance structure; (v) a description of the governance around the overall recovery and wind-down program; (vi) a discussion of tools available to DTC to mitigate credit/market and liquidity risks, including recovery indicators and triggers, and the governance around management of a stress event along a “Crisis Continuum” timeline; (vii) a discussion of potential non-default losses and the resources available to DTC to address such losses, including recovery triggers and tools to mitigate such losses; (viii) an analysis of the recovery tools’ characteristics, including how they are comprehensive, effective, and transparent, how the tools provide appropriate incentives to Participants to, among other things, control and monitor the risks they may present to DTC, and how DTC seeks to minimize the negative consequences of executing its recovery tools; and (ix) the framework and approach for the orderly wind-down and transfer of DTC’s business, including an estimate of the time and costs to effect a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC.

The R&W Plan would be structured as a roadmap, and would identify and describe the tools that DTC may use to effect a recovery from the events and scenarios described therein. Certain recovery tools that would be identified in the R&W Plan are based in the Rules (including the Proposed Rules) and, as such, descriptions of those tools would include descriptions of, and reference to, the applicable Rules and any related internal policies and procedures. Other recovery tools that would be identified in the R&W Plan are based in contractual arrangements to which DTC is a party, including, for example, existing committed or pre-arranged liquidity arrangements. Further, the R&W Plan would state that DTC may develop further supporting internal guidelines and materials that may provide operationality for matters described in the Plan, and that such documents would be supplemental and subordinate to the Plan.

Key factors considered in developing the R&W Plan and the types of tools available to DTC were its governance structure and the nature of the markets within which DTC operates. As a result of these considerations, many of the tools available to DTC that would be described in the R&W Plan are DTC's existing, business-as-usual risk management and default management tools, which would continue to be applied in scenarios of increasing stress. In addition to these existing, business-as-usual tools, the R&W Plan would describe DTC's other principal recovery tools, which include, for example, (i) identifying, monitoring and managing general business risk and holding sufficient liquid net assets funded by equity ("LNA") to cover potential general business losses pursuant to the Clearing Agency Policy on Capital Requirements ("Capital

Policy”),⁹ (ii) maintaining the Clearing Agency Capital Replenishment Plan (“Replenishment Plan”) as a viable plan for the replenishment of capital should DTC’s equity fall close to or below the amount being held pursuant to the Capital Policy,¹⁰ and (iii) the process for the allocation of losses among Participants as provided in Rule 4.¹¹ The R&W Plan would provide governance around the selection and implementation of the recovery tool or tools most relevant to mitigate a stress scenario and any applicable loss or liquidity shortfall.

The development of the R&W Plan is facilitated by the Office of Recovery & Resolution Planning (“R&R Team”) of DTCC.¹² The R&R Team reports to the DTCC Management Committee (“Management Committee”) and is responsible for maintaining the R&W Plan and for the development and ongoing maintenance of the overall recovery and wind-down planning process. The Board, or such committees as may be delegated

⁹ See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 81105 (July 7, 2017), 82 FR 32399 (July 13, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-003; SR-FICC-2017-007; SR-NSCC-2017-004).

¹⁰ See id.

¹¹ See Rule 4 (Participants Fund and Participants Investment), supra note 6. DTC is proposing changes to Rule 4 regarding allocation of losses in a separate filing submitted simultaneously with the Original Filing. See Securities Exchange Act Release Nos. 82432 (January 2, 2018), 83 FR 884 (January 8, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-021) and 82579 (January 24, 2018), 83 FR 4310 (January 30, 2018) (SR-DTC-2017-803) (collectively referred to herein as the “Loss Allocation Filing”). DTC has submitted an amendment to the Loss Allocation Filing. A copy of the amendment to the Loss Allocation Filing is available at <http://www.dtcc.com/legal/sec-rule-filings.aspx>. DTC expects the Commission to review both proposals, as amended, together, and, as such, the proposal described in this filing anticipates the approval and implementation of those proposed changes to the Rules.

¹² DTCC operates on a shared services model with respect to DTC and its other subsidiaries. Most corporate functions are established and managed on an enterprise-wide basis pursuant to intercompany agreements under which it is generally DTCC that provides a relevant service to a subsidiary, including DTC.

authority by the Board from time to time pursuant to its charter, would review and approve the R&W Plan biennially, and would also review and approve any changes that are proposed to the R&W Plan outside of the biennial review.

As discussed in greater detail below, the Proposed Rules would define the procedures that may be employed in the event of a DTC wind-down, and would provide for DTC's authority to take certain actions on the occurrence of a "Market Disruption Event," as defined therein. Significantly, the Proposed Rules would provide Participants with transparency and certainty with respect to these matters. The Proposed Rules would facilitate the implementation of the R&W Plan, particularly DTC's strategy for winding down and transferring its business, and would provide DTC with the legal basis to implement those aspects of the R&W Plan.

DTC R&W Plan

The R&W Plan is intended to be used by the Board and DTC's management in the event DTC encounters scenarios that could potentially prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. The R&W Plan would be structured to provide a roadmap, define the strategy, and identify the tools available to DTC to either (i) recover, in the event it experiences losses that exceed its prefunded resources (such strategies and tools referred to herein as the "Recovery Plan") or (ii) wind-down its business in a manner designed to permit the continuation of its critical services in the event that such recovery efforts are not successful (such strategies and tools referred to herein as the "Wind-down Plan"). The description of the R&W Plan below is intended to highlight the purpose and expected effects of the material aspects of the R&W Plan, and to provide Participants with appropriate transparency into these features.

Business Overview, Critical Services, and Governance

The introduction to the R&W Plan would identify the document’s purpose and its regulatory background, and would outline a summary of the Plan. The stated purpose of the R&W Plan is that it is to be used by the Board and DTC management in the event DTC encounters scenarios that could potentially prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. The R&W Plan would be maintained by DTC in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act¹³ by providing plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of DTC.

The R&W Plan would describe DTCC’s business profile, provide a summary of DTC’s services, and identify the intercompany arrangements and critical links between DTC and other FMIs. This overview section would provide a context for the R&W Plan by describing DTC’s business, organizational structure and critical links to other entities. By providing this context, this section would facilitate the analysis of the potential impact of utilizing the recovery tools set forth in later sections of the Recovery Plan, and the analysis of the factors that would be addressed in implementing the Wind-down Plan.

DTCC is a user-owned and user-governed holding company and is the parent company of DTC and its affiliates, National Securities Clearing Corporation (“NSCC”) and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation (“FICC,” and, together with NSCC and DTC, the “Clearing Agencies”). The Plan would describe how corporate support services are provided to DTC from DTCC and DTCC’s other subsidiaries through intercompany agreements under a shared services model.

¹³ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

The Plan would provide a description of established links between DTC and other FMIs, both domestic and foreign, including central securities depositories (“CSDs”) and central counterparties (“CCPs”), as well as the twelve U.S. Federal Reserve Banks. In general, these links are either “inbound” or “issuer” links, in which the other FMI is a Participant and/or a Pledgee and maintains one or more accounts at DTC, or “outbound” or “investor” links in which DTC maintains one or more accounts at another FMI. Key FMIs with which DTC maintains critical links include CDS Clearing and Depository Services Inc. (“CDS”), the Canadian CSD, with participant links in both directions; Euroclear Bank SA/NV (“EB”) for cross-border collateral management services; and The Options Clearing Corporation (“OCC”) and the Federal Reserve Bank of New York (“FRBNY”), each of which is both a Participant and a Pledgee. The critical link for the U.S. marketplace is the relationship between DTC and NSCC, through which continuous net settlement (“CNS”) transactions are completed by settlement at DTC, and DTC acts as settlement agent for NSCC for end-of-day funds settlement.¹⁴ This section of the Plan, identifying and briefly describing DTC’s established links, would provide a mapping of critical connections and dependencies that may need to be relied on or otherwise addressed in connection with the implementation of either the Recovery Plan or the Wind-down Plan.

The Plan would define the criteria for classifying certain of DTC’s services as “critical,” and would identify those critical services and the rationale for their classification. This section would provide an analysis of the potential systemic impact from a service disruption, and is important for evaluating how the recovery tools and the

¹⁴ DTC has other links in addition to those mentioned above. The current list of linked CSDs is available on the DTCC website.

wind-down strategy would facilitate and provide for the continuation of DTC’s critical services to the markets it serves. The criteria that would be used to identify a DTC service or function as critical would include consideration as to (1) whether there is a lack of alternative providers or products; (2) whether failure of the service could impact DTC’s ability to perform its book-entry and settlement services; (3) whether failure of the service could impact DTC’s ability to perform its payment system functions; and (4) whether the service is interconnected with other participants and processes within the U.S. financial system, for example, with other FMIs, settlement banks and broker-dealers. The Plan would then list each of those services, functions or activities that DTC has identified as “critical” based on the applicability of these four criteria. Such critical services would include, for example, MMIs and Commercial Paper Processing,¹⁵ Mandatory and Voluntary Corporate Actions,¹⁶ Cash and Stock Distributions,¹⁷ and End of Day Net Money Settlement.¹⁸ The R&W Plan would also include a non-exhaustive list of DTC services that are not deemed critical.

The evaluation of which services provided by DTC are deemed critical is important for purposes of determining how the R&W Plan would facilitate the continuity of those services. As discussed further below, while DTC’s Wind-down Plan would

¹⁵ See Rule 9(C) (Transactions in MMI Securities), supra note 6.

¹⁶ See DTC Reorganizations Service Guide, available at www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/service-guides/Reorganizations.pdf.

¹⁷ See DTC Distributions Service Guide, available at <http://www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/service-guides/Service%20Guide%20Distributions.pdf>.

¹⁸ See DTC Settlement Service Guide, available at www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/service-guides/Settlement.pdf.

provide for the transfer of all critical services to a transferee in the event DTC's wind-down is implemented, it would anticipate that any non-critical services that are ancillary and beneficial to a critical service, or that otherwise have substantial user demand from the continuing membership, would also be transferred.

The Plan would describe the governance structure of both DTCC and DTC. This section of the Plan would identify the ownership and governance model of these entities at both the Board of Directors and management levels. The Plan would state that the stages of escalation required to manage recovery under the Recovery Plan or to invoke DTC's wind-down under the Wind-down Plan would range from relevant business line managers up to the Board through DTC's governance structure. The Plan would then identify the parties responsible for certain activities under both the Recovery Plan and the Wind-down Plan, and would describe their respective roles. The Plan would identify the Risk Committee of the Board ("Board Risk Committee") as being responsible for oversight of risk management activities at DTC, which include focusing on both oversight of risk management systems and processes designed to identify and manage various risks faced by DTC, and, due to DTC's critical role in the markets in which it operates, oversight of DTC's efforts to mitigate systemic risks that could impact those markets and the broader financial system.¹⁹ The Plan would identify the DTCC Management Risk Committee ("Management Risk Committee") as primarily responsible for general, day-to-day risk management through delegated authority from the Board Risk Committee. The Plan would state that the Management Risk Committee has

¹⁹ The charter of the Board Risk Committee is available at <http://www.dtcc.com/~media/Files/Downloads/legal/policy-and-compliance/DTCC-BOD-Risk-Committee-Charter.pdf>.

delegated specific day-to-day risk management, including management of risks addressed through margining systems and related activities, to the DTCC Group Chief Risk Office (“GCRO”), which works with staff within the DTCC Financial Risk Management group. Finally, the Plan would describe the role of the Management Committee, which provides overall direction for all aspects of DTC’s business, technology, and operations and the functional areas that support these activities.

The Plan would describe the governance of recovery efforts in response to both default losses and non-default losses under the Recovery Plan, identifying the groups responsible for those recovery efforts. Specifically, the Plan would state that the Management Risk Committee provides oversight of actions relating to the default of a Participant, which would be reported and escalated to it through the GCRO, and the Management Committee provides oversight of actions relating to non-default events that could result in a loss, which would be reported and escalated to it from the DTCC Chief Financial Officer (“CFO”) and the DTCC Treasury group that reports to the CFO, and from other relevant subject matter experts based on the nature and circumstances of the non-default event.²⁰ More generally, the Plan would state that the type of loss and the nature and circumstances of the events that lead to the loss would dictate the components of governance to address that loss, including the escalation path to authorize those

²⁰ The Plan would state that these groups would be involved to address how to mitigate the financial impact of non-default losses, and in recommending mitigating actions, the Management Committee would consider information and recommendations from relevant subject matter experts based on the nature and circumstances of the non-default event. Any necessary operational response to these events, however, would be managed in accordance with applicable incident response/business continuity process; for example, processes established by the DTCC Technology Risk Management group would be followed in response to a cyber event.

actions. As described further below, both the Recovery Plan and the Wind-down Plan would describe the governance of escalations, decisions, and actions under each of those plans.

Finally, the Plan would describe the role of the R&R Team in managing the overall recovery and wind-down program and plans for each of the Clearing Agencies.

DTC Recovery Plan

The Recovery Plan is intended to be a roadmap of those actions that DTC may employ to monitor and, as needed, stabilize its financial condition. As each event that could lead to a financial loss could be unique in its circumstances, the Recovery Plan would not be prescriptive and would permit DTC to maintain flexibility in its use of identified tools and in the sequence in which such tools are used, subject to any conditions in the Rules or the contractual arrangement on which such tool is based. DTC's Recovery Plan would consist of (1) a description of the risk management surveillance, tools, and governance that DTC would employ across evolving stress scenarios that it may face as it transitions through a "Crisis Continuum," described below; (2) a description of DTC's risk of losses that may result from non-default events, and the financial resources and recovery tools available to DTC to manage those risks and any resulting losses; and (3) an evaluation of the characteristics of the recovery tools that may be used in response to either losses arising out of a Participant Default (as defined below) or non-default losses, as described in greater detail below. In all cases, DTC would act in accordance with the Rules, within the governance structure described in the R&W Plan, and in accordance with applicable regulatory oversight to address each

situation in order to best protect DTC, its Participants and the markets in which it operates.

Managing Participant Default Losses and Liquidity Needs Through the Crisis Continuum. The Plan would describe the risk management surveillance, tools, and governance that DTC may employ across an increasing stress environment, which is referred to as the “Crisis Continuum.” This description would identify those tools that can be employed to mitigate losses, and mitigate or minimize liquidity needs, as the market environment becomes increasingly stressed. The phases of the Crisis Continuum would include (1) a stable market phase, (2) a stressed market phase, (3) a phase commencing with DTC’s decision to cease to act for a Participant or Affiliated Family of Participants (referred to in the Plan as the “Participant Default phase”),²¹ and (4) a recovery phase. This section of the Recovery Plan would address conditions and circumstances relating to DTC’s decision to cease to act for a Participant pursuant to the Rules.²² For ease of reference, the R&W Plan would, for purposes of the Plan, use the term “Participant Default Losses” to refer to losses that arise out of or relate to the Participant Default and resulting cease to act (including any losses that arise from liquidation of the Participant’s Collateral).

²¹ The Plan defines an “Affiliated Family” of Participants as a number of affiliated entities that are all Participants of DTC.

²² In the Plan, “cease to act” and the actions that may lead to such decision, are used within the context of the Rules, including Rule 4 (Participants Fund and Participants Investment), Rule 9(A) (Transactions in Securities and Money Payments), Rule 9(B) (Transactions in Eligible Securities), Rule 9(C) (Transactions in MMI Securities), Rule 10 (Discretionary Termination), Rule 11 (Mandatory Termination) and Rule 12 (Insolvency), supra note 6. Further, the term “Participant Default” would also be used in the Plan as such term is defined in Rule 4, as proposed to be amended by the Loss Allocation filing, supra note 11.

The Recovery Plan would provide context to its roadmap through this Crisis Continuum by describing DTC's ongoing management of credit, market risk and liquidity risk, and its existing process for measuring and reporting its risks as they align with established thresholds for its tolerance of those risks. The Recovery Plan would discuss the management of credit/market risk and liquidity exposures together, because the tools that address these risks can be deployed either separately or in a coordinated approach in order to address both exposures. DTC manages these risk exposures collectively to limit their overall impact on DTC and its Participants. DTC has built-in mechanisms to limit exposures and replenish financial resources used in a stress event, in order to continue to operate in a safe and sound manner. DTC is a closed, collateralized system in which liquidity resources are matched against risk management controls, so, at any time, the potential net settlement obligation of the Participant or Affiliated Family of Participants with the largest net settlement obligation cannot exceed the amount of liquidity resources.²³ While Collateral securities are subject to market price risk, DTC manages its liquidity and market risks through the calculation of the required deposits to the Participants Fund²⁴ and risk management controls, i.e., collateral haircuts, the Collateral Monitor²⁵ and Net Debit Cap.²⁶

²³ DTC's liquidity risk management strategy, including the manner in which DTC would deploy liquidity tools as well as its intraday use of liquidity, is described in the Clearing Agency Liquidity Risk Management Framework. See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 80489 (April 19, 2017), 82 FR 19120 (April 25, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-004, SR-DTC-2017-005, SR-FICC-2017-008).

²⁴ See Rule 4 (Participants Fund and Participants Investment), supra note 6.

²⁵ See Rule 1, Section 1, supra note 6. For DTC, credit risk and market risk are closely related, as DTC monitors credit exposures from Participants through these risk management controls, which limit Participant settlement obligations to the amount of available liquidity resources and require those obligations to be fully

The Recovery Plan would outline the metrics and indicators that DTC has developed to evaluate a stress situation against established risk tolerance thresholds. Each risk mitigation tool identified in the Recovery Plan would include a description of the escalation thresholds that allow for effective and timely reporting to the appropriate internal management staff and committees, or to the Board. The Recovery Plan would make clear that these tools and escalation protocols would be calibrated across each phase of the Crisis Continuum. The Recovery Plan would also establish that DTC would retain the flexibility to deploy such tools either separately or in a coordinated approach, and to use other alternatives to these actions and tools as necessitated by the circumstances of a particular Participant Default event, in accordance with the Rules. Therefore, the Recovery Plan would both provide DTC with a roadmap to follow within each phase of the Crisis Continuum, and would permit it to adjust its risk management measures to address the unique circumstances of each event.

The Recovery Plan would describe the conditions that mark each phase of the Crisis Continuum, and would identify actions that DTC could take as it transitions through each phase in order to both prevent losses from materializing through active risk management, and to restore the financial health of DTC during a period of stress.

The stable market phase of the Crisis Continuum would describe active risk management activities in the normal course of business. These activities would include

collateralized. The pledge or liquidation of collateral in an amount sufficient to restore liquidity resources depends on market values and demand, *i.e.*, market risk exposure. Such risk management controls are part of DTC's market risk management strategy and are designed to comply with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(4) under the Act, where these risks are referred to as "credit risks." See also 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(4).

performing (1) backtests to evaluate the adequacy of the collateral level and the haircut sufficiency for covering market price volatility and (2) stress testing to cover market price moves under real historical and hypothetical scenarios to assess the haircut adequacy under extreme but plausible market conditions. The backtesting and stress testing results are escalated, as necessary, to internal and Board committees.²⁷

The Recovery Plan would describe some of the indicators of the stress market phase of the Crisis Continuum, which would include, for example, volatility in market prices of certain assets where there is increased uncertainty among market participants about the fundamental value of those assets. This phase would involve general market stresses, when no Participant Default would be imminent. Within the description of this phase, the Recovery Plan would provide that DTC may take targeted, routine risk management measures as necessary and as permitted by the Rules.

Within the Participant Default phase of the Crisis Continuum, the Recovery Plan would provide a roadmap for the existing procedures that DTC would follow in the event of a Participant Default and any decision by DTC to cease to act for that Participant.²⁸ The Recovery Plan would provide that the objectives of DTC's actions upon a Participant Default are to (1) minimize losses and market exposure, and (2), to the extent practicable, minimize disturbances to the affected markets. The Recovery Plan would describe tools, actions, and related governance for both market risk monitoring and liquidity risk

²⁷ DTC's stress testing practices are described in the Clearing Agency Stress Testing Framework (Market Risk). See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 80485 (April 19, 2017), 82 FR 19131 (April 25, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-005, SR-FICC-2017-009, SR-NSCC-2017-006).

²⁸ See Rule 10 (Discretionary Termination); Rule 11 (Mandatory Termination); Rule 12 (Insolvency), supra note 6.

monitoring through this phase. For example, in connection with managing its market risk during this phase, DTC would, pursuant to its Rules and existing procedures, (1) monitor and assess the adequacy of its Participants Fund and Net Debit Caps; and (2) follow its operational procedures relating to the execution of a liquidation of the Defaulting Participant's Collateral securities through close collaboration and coordination across multiple functions. Management of liquidity risk through this phase would involve ongoing monitoring of, among other things, the adequacy of the Participants Fund and risk controls, and the Recovery Plan would identify certain actions DTC may deploy as it deems necessary to mitigate a potential liquidity shortfall, which would include, for example, the reduction of Net Debit Caps of some or all Participants, or seeking additional liquidity resources. The Recovery Plan would state that, throughout this phase, relevant information would be escalated and reported to both internal management committees and the Board Risk Committee.

The Recovery Plan would also identify financial resources available to DTC, pursuant to the Rules, to address losses arising out of a Participant Default. Specifically, Rule 4, as proposed to be amended by the Loss Allocation Filing, would provide that losses remaining after application of the Defaulting Participant's resources be satisfied first by applying a "Corporate Contribution," and then, if necessary, by allocating remaining losses among the membership in accordance with such Rule 4, as amended.²⁹

²⁹ See supra note 11. The Loss Allocation Filing proposes to amend Rule 4 to define the amount DTC would contribute to address a loss resulting from either a Participant Default or a non-default event as the "Corporate Contribution." This amount would be 50 percent (50%) of the "General Business Risk Capital Requirement," which is calculated pursuant to the Capital Policy and is an amount sufficient to cover potential general business losses so that DTC can continue operations and services as a going concern if those losses materialize, in

In order to provide for an effective and timely recovery, the Recovery Plan would describe the period of time that would occur near the end of the Participant Default phase, during which DTC may experience stress events or observe early warning indicators that allow it to evaluate its options and prepare for the recovery phase (referred to in the Plan as the “Recovery Corridor”). The Recovery Plan would then describe the recovery phase of the Crisis Continuum, which would begin on the date that DTC issues the first Loss Allocation Notice of the second loss allocation round with respect to a given “Event Period.”³⁰ The recovery phase would describe actions that DTC may take to avoid entering into a wind-down of its business.

DTC expects that significant deterioration of liquidity resources would cause it to enter the Recovery Corridor. As such, the Plan would describe the actions DTC may take aimed at replenishing those resources Recovery Corridor indicators may include, for example, a rapid and material increase in market prices or sequential or simultaneous failures of multiple Participants or Affiliated Families of Participants over a compressed time period. Throughout the Recovery Corridor, DTC would monitor the adequacy of its

compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15) under the Act. See also supra note 9; 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(15).

³⁰ The Loss Allocation Filing proposes to amend Rule 4 to introduce the concept of an “Event Period” as the ten (10) Business Days beginning on (i) with respect to a Participant Default, the day on which DTC notifies Participants that it has ceased to act for a Participant, or (ii) with respect to a non-default loss, the day that DTC notifies Participants of the determination by the Board of Directors that there is a non-default loss event, as described in greater detail in that filing. The proposed Rule 4 would define a “round” as a series of loss allocations relating to an Event Period, and would provide that the first Loss Allocation Notice in a first, second, or subsequent round shall expressly state that such notice reflects the beginning of a first, second, or subsequent round. The maximum allocable loss amount of a round is equal to the sum of the “Loss Allocation Caps” (as defined in the proposed Rule 4) of those Participants included in the round. See supra note 11.

resources and the expected timing of replenishment of those resources, and would do so through the monitoring of certain corridor indicator metrics.

The majority of the corridor indicators, as identified in the Recovery Plan, relate directly to conditions that may require DTC to adjust its strategy for hedging and liquidating Collateral securities, and any such changes would include an assessment of the status of the corridor indicators. Corridor indicators would include, for example, effectiveness and speed of DTC's efforts to liquidate Collateral securities, and an impediment to the availability of its resources to repay any borrowings due to any Participant default. For each corridor indicator, the Recovery Plan would identify (1) measures of the indicator, (2) evaluations of the status of the indicator, (3) metrics for determining the status of the deterioration or improvement of the indicator, and (4) "Corridor Actions," which are steps that may be taken to improve the status of the indicator,³¹ as well as management escalations required to authorize those steps. Because DTC has never experienced the default of multiple Participants, it has not, historically, measured the deterioration or improvements metrics of the corridor indicators. As such, these metrics were chosen based on the business judgment of DTC management.

The Recovery Plan would also describe the reporting and escalation of the status of the corridor indicators throughout the Recovery Corridor. Significant deterioration of a corridor indicator, as measured by the metrics set out in the Recovery Plan, would be escalated to the Board. DTC management would review the corridor indicators and the

³¹ The Corridor Actions that would be identified in the Plan are indicative, but not prescriptive; therefore, if DTC needs to consider alternative actions due to the applicable facts and circumstances, the escalation of those alternative actions would follow the same escalation protocol identified in the Plan for the Corridor Indicator to which the action relates.

related metrics at least annually, and would modify these metrics as necessary in light of observations from simulations of Participant Defaults and other analyses. Any proposed modifications would be reviewed by the Management Risk Committee and the Board Risk Committee. The Recovery Plan would estimate that DTC may remain in the Recovery Corridor stage between one day and two weeks. This estimate is based on historical data observed in past Participant Default events, the results of simulations of Participant Defaults, and periodic liquidity analyses conducted by DTC. The actual length of a Recovery Corridor would vary based on actual market conditions observed at the time, and DTC would expect the Recovery Corridor to be shorter in market conditions of increased stress.

The Recovery Plan would outline steps by which DTC may allocate its losses, which would occur when and in the order provided in Rule 4, as amended.³² The Recovery Plan would also identify tools that may be used to address foreseeable shortfalls of DTC's liquidity resources following a Participant Default, and would provide that these tools may be used as appropriate during the Crisis Continuum to address liquidity shortfalls if they arise. The goal in managing DTC's liquidity resources is to maximize resource availability in an evolving stress situation, to maintain flexibility in the order and use of sources of liquidity, and to repay any third party lenders in a timely manner. Liquidity tools include, for example, DTC's committed 364-day credit facility³³ and Net Credit Reductions.³⁴ The Recovery Plan would state that the

³² As these matters are described in greater detail in the Loss Allocation Filing and in the proposed amendments to Rule 4, described therein, reference is made to that filing and the details are not repeated here. See supra note 11.

³³ See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 80605 (May 5, 2017), 82 FR 21850 (May 10, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-802; SR-NSCC-2017-802).

availability and capacity of these liquidity tools cannot be accurately predicted and are dependent on the circumstances of the applicable stress period, including market price volatility, actual or perceived disruptions in financial markets, the costs to DTC of utilizing these tools, and any potential impact on DTC's credit rating.

As stated above, the Recovery Plan would state that DTC will have entered the recovery phase on the date that it issues the first Loss Allocation Notice of the second loss allocation round with respect to a given Event Period. The Recovery Plan would provide that, during the recovery phase, DTC would continue and, as needed, enhance, the monitoring and remedial actions already described in connection with previous phases of the Crisis Continuum, and would remain in the recovery phase until its financial resources are expected to be or are fully replenished, or until the Wind-down Plan is triggered, as described below.

The Recovery Plan would describe governance for the actions and tools that may be employed within each phase of the Crisis Continuum, which would be dictated by the facts and circumstances applicable to the situation being addressed. Such facts and circumstances would be measured by the various indicators and metrics applicable to that phase of the Crisis Continuum, and would follow relevant escalation protocol that would be described in the Recovery Plan. The Recovery Plan would also describe the governance procedures around a decision to cease to act for a Participant, pursuant to the Rules, and around the management and oversight of the subsequent liquidation of

³⁴ DTC may borrow amounts needed to complete settlement from Participants by net credit reductions to their settlement accounts, secured by the Collateral of the defaulting Participant. See Securities Exchange Act Release Nos. 24689 (July 9, 1987), 52 FR 26613 (July 15, 1987) (SR-DTC-87-4); 41879 (September 15, 1999), 64 FR 51360 (September 22, 1999) (SR-DTC-99-15); 42281 (December 28, 1999), 65 FR 1420 (January 10, 2000) (SR-DTC-99-25).

Collateral securities. The Recovery Plan would state that, overall, DTC would retain flexibility in accordance with the Rules, its governance structure, and its regulatory oversight, to address a particular situation in order to best protect DTC and its Participants, and to meet the primary objectives, throughout the Crisis Continuum, of minimizing losses and, where consistent and practicable, minimizing disturbance to affected markets.

Non-Default Losses. The Recovery Plan would outline how DTC may address losses that result from events other than a Participant Default. While these matters are addressed in greater detail in other documents, this section of the Plan would provide a roadmap to those documents and an outline for DTC's approach to monitoring and managing losses that could result from a non-default event. The Plan would first identify some of the risks DTC faces that could lead to these losses, which include, for example, the business and profit/loss risks of unexpected declines in revenue or growth of expenses; the operational risks of disruptions to systems or processes that could lead to large losses, including those resulting from, for example, a cyber-attack; and custody or investment risks that could lead to financial losses. The Recovery Plan would describe DTC's overall strategy for the management of these risks, which includes a "three lines of defense" approach to risk management that allows for comprehensive management of risk across the organization.³⁵ The Recovery Plan would also describe DTC's approach

³⁵ This "three lines of defense" approach to risk management includes (1) a first line of defense comprised of the various business lines and functional units that support the products and services offered by DTC; (2) a second line of defense comprised of control functions that support DTC, including the risk management, legal and compliance areas; and (3) a third line of defense, which is performed by an internal audit group. The Clearing Agency Risk Management Framework includes a description of this "three lines of defense" approach to risk

to financial risk and capital management. The Plan would identify key aspects of this approach, including, for example, an annual budget process, business line performance reviews with management, and regular review of capital requirements against LNA. These risk management strategies are collectively intended to allow DTC to effectively identify, monitor, and manage risks of non-default losses.

The Plan would identify the two categories of financial resources DTC maintains to cover losses and expenses arising from non-default risks or events as (1) LNA, maintained, monitored, and managed pursuant to the Capital Policy, which include (a) amounts held in satisfaction of the General Business Risk Capital Requirement,³⁶ (b) the Corporate Contribution,³⁷ and (c) other amounts held in excess of DTC's capital requirements pursuant to the Capital Policy; and (2) resources available pursuant to the loss allocation provisions of Rule 4.³⁸

The Plan would address the process by which the CFO and the DTCC Treasury group would determine which available LNA resources are most appropriate to cover a loss that is caused by a non-default event. This determination involves an evaluation of a

management, and addresses how DTC comprehensively manages various risks, including operational, general business, investment, custody, and other risks that arise in or are borne by it. See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 81635 (September 15, 2017), 82 FR 44224 (September 21, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-013; SR-FICC-2017-016; SR-NSCC-2017-012). The Clearing Agency Operational Risk Management Framework describes the manner in which DTC manages operational risks, as defined therein. See Securities Exchange Act Release No. 81745 (September 28, 2017), 82 FR 46332 (October 4, 2017) (SR-DTC-2017-014; SR-FICC-2017-017; SR-NSCC-2017-013).

³⁶ See supra note 29.

³⁷ See supra note 29.

³⁸ See supra note 11.

number of factors, including the current and expected size of the loss, the expected time horizon over when the loss or additional expenses would materialize, the current and projected available LNA, and the likelihood LNA could be successfully replenished pursuant to the Replenishment Plan, if triggered.³⁹ Finally the Plan would discuss how DTC would apply its resources to address losses resulting from a non-default event, including the order of resources it would apply if the loss or liability is expected to exceed DTC's excess LNA amounts, or is large relative thereto, and the Board has declared the event a "Declared Non-Default Loss Event" pursuant to Rule 4.⁴⁰

The Plan would also describe proposed Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure), which DTC is proposing to adopt in its Rules. This Proposed Rule would provide transparency around how DTC would address extraordinary events that may occur outside its control. Specifically, the Proposed Rule would define a "Market Disruption Event" and the governance around a determination that such an event has occurred. The Proposed Rule would also describe DTC's authority to take actions during the pendency of a Market Disruption Event that it deems appropriate to address such an event and facilitate the continuation of its services, if practicable, as described in greater detail below.

The Plan would describe the interaction between the Proposed Rule and DTC's existing processes and procedures addressing business continuity management and disaster recovery (generally, the "BCM/DR procedures"), making clear that the Proposed Rule is designed to support those BCM/DR procedures and to address circumstances that

³⁹ See supra note 9.

⁴⁰ See supra note 11.

may be exogenous to DTC and not necessarily addressed by the BCM/DR procedures. Finally, the Plan would describe that, because the operation of the Proposed Rule is specific to each applicable Market Disruption Event, the Proposed Rule does not define a time limit on its application. However, the Plan would note that actions authorized by the Proposed Rule would be limited to the pendency of the applicable Market Disruption Event, as made clear in the Proposed Rule. Overall, the Proposed Rule is designed to mitigate risks caused by Market Disruption Events and, thereby, minimize the risk of financial loss that may result from such events.

Recovery Tool Characteristics. The Recovery Plan would describe DTC's evaluation of the tools identified within the Recovery Plan, and its rationale for concluding that such tools are comprehensive, effective, and transparent, and that such tools provide appropriate incentives to Participants and minimize negative impact on Participants and the financial system, in compliance with guidance published by the Commission in connection with the adoption of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act.⁴¹ DTC's analysis and the conclusions set forth in this section of the Recovery Plan are described in greater detail in Item 3(b) of this filing, below.

DTC Wind-down Plan

The Wind-down Plan would provide the framework and strategy for the orderly wind-down of DTC if the use of the recovery tools described in the Recovery Plan do not successfully return DTC to financial viability. While DTC believes that, given the comprehensive nature of the recovery tools, such event is extremely unlikely, as described in greater detail below, DTC is proposing a wind-down strategy that provides

⁴¹ Standards for Covered Clearing Agencies, Securities Exchange Act Release No. 78961 (September 28, 2016), 81 FR 70786 (October 13, 2016) (S7-03-14).

for (1) the transfer of DTC's business, assets, securities inventory, and membership to another legal entity, (2) such transfer being effected in connection with proceedings under Chapter 11 of the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code,⁴² and (3) after effectuating this transfer, DTC liquidating any remaining assets in an orderly manner in bankruptcy proceedings. DTC believes that the proposed transfer approach to a wind-down would meet its objectives of (1) assuring that DTC's critical services will be available to the market as long as there are Participants in good standing, and (2) minimizing disruption to the operations of Participants and financial markets generally that might be caused by DTC's failure.

In describing the transfer approach to DTC's Wind-down Plan, the Plan would identify the factors that DTC considered in developing this approach, including the fact that DTC does not own material assets that are unrelated to its clearance and settlement activities. As such, a business reorganization or "bail-in" of debt approach would be unlikely to mitigate significant losses. Additionally, DTC's approach was developed in consideration of its critical and unique position in the U.S. markets, which precludes any approach that would cause DTC's critical services to no longer be available.

First, the Wind-down Plan would describe the potential scenarios that could lead to the wind-down of DTC, and the likelihood of such scenarios. The Wind-down Plan would identify the time period leading up to a decision to wind-down DTC as the "Runway Period." This period would follow the implementation of any recovery tools, as it may take a period of time, depending on the severity of the market stress at that time, for these tools to be effective or for DTC to realize a loss sufficient to cause it to be

⁴² 11 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.

unable to borrow to complete settlement and to repay such borrowings.⁴³ The Plan would identify some of the indicators that DTC has entered this Runway Period, which would include, for example, simultaneous successive Participant Defaults, significant Participant retirements, and DTC's inability to replenish financial resources following the liquidation of Collateral securities.

The trigger for implementing the Wind-down Plan would be a determination by the Board that recovery efforts have not been, or are unlikely to be, successful in returning DTC to viability as a going concern. As described in the Plan, DTC believes this is an appropriate trigger because it is both broad and flexible enough to cover a variety of scenarios, and would align incentives of DTC and Participants to avoid actions that might undermine DTC's recovery efforts. Additionally, this approach takes into account the characteristics of DTC's recovery tools and enables the Board to consider (1) the presence of indicators of a successful or unsuccessful recovery, and (2) potential for knock-on effects of continued iterative application of DTC's recovery tools.

The Wind-down Plan would describe the general objectives of the transfer strategy, and would address assumptions regarding the transfer of DTC's critical services, business, assets, securities inventory, and membership⁴⁴ to another legal entity that is legally, financially, and operationally able to provide DTC's critical services to entities

⁴³ The Wind-down Plan would state that, given DTC's position as a user-governed financial market utility, it is possible that its Participants might voluntarily elect to provide additional support during the recovery phase leading up to a potential trigger of the Wind-down Plan, but would also make clear that DTC cannot predict the willingness of Participants to do so.

⁴⁴ Arrangements with FAST Agents and DRS Agents (each as defined in proposed Rule 32(A)) and with Settling Banks would also be assigned to the Transferee, so that the approach would be transparent to issuers and their transfer agents, as well as to Settling Banks.

that wish to continue their membership following the transfer (“Transferee”). The Wind-down Plan would provide that the Transferee would be either (1) a third party legal entity, which may be an existing or newly established legal entity or a bridge entity formed to operate the business on an interim basis to enable the business to be transferred subsequently (“Third Party Transferee”); or (2) an existing, debt-free failover legal entity established ex-ante by DTCC (“Failover Transferee”) to be used as an alternative Transferee in the event that no viable or preferable Third Party Transferee timely commits to acquire DTC’s business. DTC would seek to identify the proposed Transferee, and negotiate and enter into transfer arrangements during the Runway Period and prior to making any filings under Chapter 11 of the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code.⁴⁵ As stated above, the Wind-down Plan would anticipate that the transfer to the Transferee, including the transfer and establishment of the Participant and Pledgee securities accounts on the books of the Transferee, be effected in connection with proceedings under Chapter 11 of the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code, and pursuant to a bankruptcy court order under Section 363 of the Bankruptcy Code, such that the transfer would be free and clear of claims against, and interests in, DTC, except to the extent expressly provided in the court’s order.⁴⁶

In order to effect a timely transfer of its services and minimize the market and operational disruption of such transfer, DTC would expect to transfer all of its critical services and any non-critical services that are ancillary and beneficial to a critical service, or that otherwise have substantial user demand from the continuing membership. Given

⁴⁵ 11 U.S.C. 1101 et seq.

⁴⁶ See id. at 363.

the transfer of the securities inventory and the establishment on the books of the Transferee Participant and Pledgee securities accounts, DTC anticipates that, following the transfer, it would not itself continue to provide any services, critical or not. Following the transfer, the Wind-down Plan would anticipate that the Transferee and its continuing membership would determine whether to continue to provide any transferred non-critical service on an ongoing basis, or terminate the non-critical service following some transition period. DTC's Wind-down Plan would anticipate that the Transferee would enter into a transition services agreement with DTCC so that DTCC would continue to provide the shared services it currently provides to DTC, including staffing, infrastructure and operational support. The Wind-down Plan would also anticipate the assignment of DTC's "inbound" link arrangements to the Transferee. The Wind-down Plan would provide that in the case of "outbound" links, DTC would seek to have the linked FMIs agree, at a minimum, to accept the Transferee as a link party for a transition period.⁴⁷

The Wind-down Plan would provide that, following the effectiveness of the transfer to the Transferee, the wind-down of DTC would involve addressing any residual claims against DTC through the bankruptcy process and liquidating the legal entity. As such, and as stated above, the Wind-down Plan does not contemplate DTC continuing to

⁴⁷ The proposed transfer arrangements outlined in the Wind-down Plan do not contemplate the transfer of any credit or funding agreements, which are generally not assignable by DTC. However, to the extent the Transferee adopts rules substantially identical to those DTC has in effect prior to the transfer, it would have the benefit of any rules-based liquidity funding. The Wind-down Plan contemplates that no Participants Fund would be transferred to the Transferee, as it is not held in a bankruptcy remote manner and it is the primary prefunded liquidity resource to be accessed in the recovery phase.

provide services in any capacity following the transfer time, and any services not transferred would be terminated.

The Wind-down Plan would also identify the key dependencies for the effectiveness of the transfer, which include regulatory approvals that would permit the Transferee to be legally qualified to provide the transferred services from and after the transfer, and approval by the applicable bankruptcy court of, among other things, the proposed sale, assignments, and transfers to the Transferee.

The Wind-down Plan would address governance matters related to the execution of the transfer of DTC's business and its wind-down. The Wind-down Plan would address the duties of the Board to execute the wind-down of DTC in conformity with (1) the Rules, (2) the Board's fiduciary duties, which mandate that it exercise reasonable business judgment in performing these duties, and (3) DTC's regulatory obligations under the Act as a registered clearing agency. The Wind-down Plan would also identify certain factors the Board may consider in making these decisions, which would include, for example, whether DTC could safely stabilize the business and protect its value without seeking bankruptcy protection, and DTC's ability to continue to meet its regulatory requirements.

The Wind-down Plan would describe (1) actions DTC or DTCC may take to prepare for wind-down in the period before DTC experiences any financial distress, (2) actions DTC would take both during the recovery phase and the Runway Period to prepare for the execution of the Wind-down Plan, and (3) actions DTC would take upon commencement of bankruptcy proceedings to effectuate the Wind-down Plan.

Finally, the Wind-down Plan would include an analysis of the estimated time and costs to effectuate the plan, and would provide that this estimate be reviewed and approved by the Board annually. In order to estimate the length of time it might take to achieve a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC's critical operations, as contemplated by the R&W Plan, the Wind-down Plan would include an analysis of the possible sequencing and length of time it might take to complete an orderly wind-down and transfer of critical operations, as described in earlier sections of the R&W Plan. The Wind-down Plan would also include in this analysis consideration of other factors, including the time it might take to complete any further attempts at recovery under the Recovery Plan. The Wind-down Plan would then multiply this estimated length of time by DTC's average monthly operating expenses, including adjustments to account for changes to DTC's profit and expense profile during these circumstances, over the previous twelve months to determine the amount of LNA that it should hold to achieve a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC's critical operations. The estimated wind-down costs would constitute the "Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement" under the Capital Policy.⁴⁸ Under that policy, the General Business Risk Capital Requirement is calculated as the greatest of three estimated amounts, one of which is this Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement.⁴⁹

The R&W Plan is designed as a roadmap, and the types of actions that may be taken both leading up to and in connection with implementation of the Wind-down Plan would be primarily addressed in other supporting documentation referred to therein.

⁴⁸ See supra note 9.

⁴⁹ See supra note 9.

The Wind-down Plan would address proposed Rule 32(A) (Wind-down of the Corporation and proposed Rule 38 (Force Majeure and Market Disruption)), which would be adopted to facilitate the implementation of the Wind-down Plan, as discussed below.

Proposed Rules

In connection with the adoption of the R&W Plan, DTC is proposing to adopt the Proposed Rules, each described below. The Proposed Rules would facilitate the execution of the R&W Plan and would provide Participants with transparency as to critical aspects of the Plan, particularly as they relate to the rights and responsibilities of both DTC and its Participants. The Proposed Rules also provide a legal basis to these aspects of the Plan.

Rule 32(A) (Wind-down of the Corporation)

The proposed Rule 32(A) (“Wind-down Rule”) would be adopted to facilitate the execution of the Wind-down Plan. The Wind-down Rule would include a proposed set of defined terms that would be applicable only to the provisions of this Proposed Rule. The Wind-down Rule would make clear that a wind-down of DTC’s business would occur (1) after a decision is made by the Board, and (2) in connection with the transfer of DTC’s services to a Transferee, as described therein. Generally, the proposed Wind-down Rule is designed to create clear mechanisms for the transfer of Eligible Participants and Pledgees, Settling Banks, DRS Agents, and FAST Agents (as these terms would be defined in the Wind-down Rule), and DTC’s inventory of financial assets in order to provide for continued access to critical services and to minimize disruption to the markets in the event the Wind-down Plan is initiated.

Wind-down Trigger. First, the Proposed Rule would make clear that the Board is responsible for initiating the Wind-down Plan, and would identify the criteria the Board would consider when making this determination. As provided for in the Wind-down Plan and in the proposed Wind-down Rule, the Board would initiate the Plan if, in the exercise of its business judgment and subject to its fiduciary duties, it has determined that the execution of the Recovery Plan has not or is not likely to restore DTC to viability as a going concern, and the implementation of the Wind-down Plan, including the transfer of DTC's business, is in the best interests of DTC, its Participants and Pledgees, its shareholders and creditors, and the U.S. financial markets.

Identification of Critical Services; Designation of Dates and Times for Specific Actions. The Proposed Rule would provide that, upon making a determination to initiate the Wind-down Plan, the Board would identify the critical and non-critical services that would be transferred to the Transferee at the Transfer Time (as defined below and in the Proposed Rule), as well as any non-critical services that would not be transferred to the Transferee. The proposed Wind-down Rule would establish that any services transferred to the Transferee will only be provided by the Transferee as of the Transfer Time, and that any non-critical services that are not transferred to the Transferee would be terminated at the Transfer Time. The Proposed Rule would also provide that the Board would establish (1) an effective time for the transfer of DTC's business to a Transferee ("Transfer Time"), and (2) the last day that instructions in respect of securities and other financial products may be effectuated through the facilities of DTC (the "Last Activity Date"). The Proposed Rule would make clear that DTC would not accept any transactions for settlement after the Last Activity Date. Any transactions to be settled

after the Transfer Time would be required to be submitted to the Transferee, and would not be DTC's responsibility.

Notice Provisions. The proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that, upon a decision to implement the Wind-down Plan, DTC would provide its Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, Settling Banks and regulators with a notice that includes material information relating to the Wind-down Plan and the anticipated transfer of DTC's Participants and business, including, for example, (1) a brief statement of the reasons for the decision to implement the Wind-down Plan; (2) identification of the Transferee and information regarding the transaction by which the transfer of DTC's business would be effected; (3) the Transfer Time and Last Activity Date; and (4) identification of Participants and the critical and non-critical services that would be transferred to the Transferee at the Transfer Time, as well as those Non-Eligible Participants (as defined below and in the Proposed Rule) and any non-critical services that would not be included in the transfer. DTC would also make available the rules and procedures and membership agreements of the Transferee.

Transfer of Membership. The proposed Wind-down Rule would address the expected transfer of DTC's membership to the Transferee, which DTC would seek to effectuate by entering into an arrangement with a Failover Transferee, or by using commercially reasonable efforts to enter into such an arrangement with a Third Party Transferee. Thus, under the proposal, in connection with the implementation of the Wind-down Plan and with no further action required by any party:

- (1) each Eligible Participant would become (i) a Participant of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Participants agreement with the Transferee;

(2) each Participant that is delinquent in the performance of any obligation to DTC or that has provided notice of its election to withdraw as a Participant (a “Non-Eligible Participant”) as of the Transfer Time would become (i) the holder of a transition period securities account maintained by the Transferee on its books (“Transition Period Securities Account”) and (ii) a party to a Transition Period Securities Account agreement of the Transferee;

(3) each Pledgee would become (i) a Pledgee of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Pledgee agreement with the Transferee;

(4) each DRS Agent would become (i) a DRS Agent of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a DRS Agent agreement with the Transferee;

(5) each FAST Agent would become (i) a FAST Agent of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a FAST Agent agreement with the Transferee; and

(6) each Settling Bank for Participants and Pledgees would become (i) a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledgees of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Settling Bank Agreement with the Transferee.

Further, the Proposed Rule would make clear that it would not prohibit (1) Non-Eligible Participants from applying for membership with the Transferee, (2) Non-Eligible Participants that have become holders of Transition Period Securities Accounts (“Transition Period Securities Account Holders”) of the Transferee from withdrawing as a Transition Period Securities Account Holder from the Transferee, subject to the rules and procedures of the Transferee, and (3) Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, and Settling Banks that would be transferred to the Transferee from withdrawing from membership with the Transferee, subject to the rules and procedures of the

Transferee. Under the Proposed Rule, Non-Eligible Participants that have become Transition Period Securities Account Holders of the Transferee shall have the rights and be subject to the obligations of Transition Period Securities Account Holders set forth in special provisions of the rules and procedures of the Transferee applicable to such Transition Period Securities Account Holder. Specifically, Non-Eligible Participants that become Transition Period Securities Account Holders must, within the Transition Period (as defined in the Proposed Rule), instruct the Transferee to transfer the financial assets credited to its Transition Period Securities Account (i) to a Participant of the Transferee through the facilities of the Transferee or (ii) to a recipient outside the facilities of the Transferee, and no additional financial assets may be delivered versus payment to a Transition Period Securities Account during the Transition Period.

Transfer of Inventory of Financial Assets. The proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that DTC would enter into arrangements with a Failover Transferee, or would use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Third Party Transferee, providing that, in either case, at Transfer Time:

(1) DTC would transfer to the Transferee (i) its rights with respect to its nominee Cede & Co. (“Cede”) (and thereby its rights with respect to the financial assets owned of record by Cede), (ii) the financial assets held by it at the FRBNY, (iii) the financial assets held by it at other CSDs, (iv) the financial assets held in custody for it with FAST Agents, (v) the financial assets held in custody for it with other custodians and (vi) the financial assets it holds in physical custody.

(2) The Transferee would establish security entitlements on its books for Eligible Participants of DTC that become Participants of the Transferee that replicate the

security entitlements that DTC maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time for such Eligible Participants, and DTC would simultaneously eliminate such security entitlements from its books.

(3) The Transferee would establish security entitlements on its books for Non-Eligible Participants of DTC that become Transition Period Securities Account Holders of the Transferee that replicate the security entitlements that DTC maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time for such Non-Eligible Participants, and DTC would simultaneously eliminate such security entitlements from its books.

(4) The Transferee would establish pledges on its books in favor of Pledges that become Pledges of the Transferee that replicate the pledges that DTC maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time in favor of such Pledges, and DTC shall simultaneously eliminate such pledges from its books.

Comparability Period. The proposed automatic mechanism for the transfer of DTC's membership is intended to provide DTC's membership with continuous access to critical services in the event of DTC's wind-down, and to facilitate the continued prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions. Further to this goal, the proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that DTC would enter into arrangements with a Failover Transferee, or would use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Third Party Transferee, providing that, in either case, with respect to the critical services and any non-critical services that are transferred from DTC to the Transferee, for at least a period of time to be agreed upon ("Comparability Period"), the business transferred from DTC to the Transferee would be operated in a manner that is comparable to the manner in which the business was previously operated by DTC.

Specifically, the proposed Wind-down Rule would provide that: (1) the rules of the Transferee and terms of Participant, Pledgee, DRS Agent, FAST Agent and Settling Bank agreements would be comparable in substance and effect to the analogous Rules and agreements of DTC, (2) the rights and obligations of any Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, and Settling Banks that are transferred to the Transferee would be comparable in substance and effect to their rights and obligations as to DTC, and (3) the Transferee would operate the transferred business and provide any services that are transferred in a comparable manner to which such services were provided by DTC.

The purpose of these provisions and the intended effect of the proposed Wind-down Rule is to facilitate a smooth transition of DTC's business to a Transferee and to provide that, for at least the Comparability Period, the Transferee (1) would operate the transferred business in a manner that is comparable in substance and effect to the manner in which the business was operated by DTC, and (2) would not require sudden and disruptive changes in the systems, operations and business practices of the new Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents, and Settling Banks of the Transferee.

Subordination of Claims Provisions and Miscellaneous Matters. The proposed Wind-down Rule would also include a provision addressing the subordination of unsecured claims against DTC of its Participants who fail to participate in DTC's recovery efforts (*i.e.*, such firms are delinquent in their obligations to DTC or elect to retire from DTC in order to minimize their obligations with respect to the allocation of

losses, pursuant to the Rules). This provision is designed to incentivize Participants to participate in DTC's recovery efforts.⁵⁰

The proposed Wind-down Rule would address other ex-ante matters, including provisions providing that its Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks (1) will assist and cooperate with DTC to effectuate the transfer of DTC's business to a Transferee, (2) consent to the provisions of the rule, and (3) grant DTC power of attorney to execute and deliver on their behalf documents and instruments that may be requested by the Transferee. Finally, the Proposed Rule would include a limitation of liability for any actions taken or omitted to be taken by DTC pursuant to the Proposed Rule. The purpose of the limitation of liability is to facilitate and protect DTC's ability to act expeditiously in response to extraordinary events. As noted, such limitation of liability would be available only following triggering of the Wind-down Plan. In addition, and as a separate matter, the limitation of liability provides Participants with transparency for the unlikely situation when those extraordinary events could occur, as well supporting the legal framework within which DTC would take such actions. These provisions, collectively, are designed to enable DTC to take such acts as the Board determines necessary to effectuate an orderly transfer and wind-down of its business should recovery efforts prove unsuccessful.

⁵⁰ Nothing in the proposed Wind-down Rule would seek to prevent a Participant that retired its membership at DTC from applying for membership with the Transferee. Once its DTC membership is terminated, however, such firm would not be able to benefit from the membership assignment that would be effected by this proposed Wind-down Rule, and it would have to apply for membership directly with the Transferee, subject to its membership application and review process.

Rule 38 (Market Disruption and Force Majeure)

The proposed Rule 38 (“Force Majeure Rule”) would address DTC’s authority to take certain actions upon the occurrence, and during the pendency, of a “Market Disruption Event,” as defined therein. The Proposed Rule is designed to clarify DTC’s ability to take actions to address extraordinary events outside of the control of DTC and of its membership, and to mitigate the effect of such events by facilitating the continuity of services (or, if deemed necessary, the temporary suspension of services). To that end, under the proposed Force Majeure Rule, DTC would be entitled, during the pendency of a Market Disruption Event, to (1) suspend the provision of any or all services, and (2) take, or refrain from taking, or require its Participants and Pledges to take, or refrain from taking, any actions it considers appropriate to address, alleviate, or mitigate the event and facilitate the continuation of DTC’s services as may be practicable.

The proposed Force Majeure Rule would identify the events or circumstances that would be considered a “Market Disruption Event,” including, for example, events that lead to the suspension or limitation of trading or banking in the markets in which DTC operates, or the unavailability or failure of any material payment, bank transfer, wire or securities settlement systems. The proposed Force Majeure Rule would define the governance procedures for how DTC would determine whether, and how, to implement the provisions of the rule. A determination that a Market Disruption Event has occurred would generally be made by the Board, but the Proposed Rule would provide for limited, interim delegation of authority to a specified officer or management committee if the Board would not be able to take timely action. In the event such delegated authority is exercised, the proposed Force Majeure Rule would require that the Board be convened as

promptly as practicable, no later than five Business Days after such determination has been made, to ratify, modify, or rescind the action. The proposed Force Majeure Rule would also provide for prompt notification to the Commission, and advance consultation with Commission staff, when practicable, including notification when an event is no longer continuing and the relevant actions are terminated. The Proposed Rule would require Participants and Pledges to notify DTC immediately upon becoming aware of a Market Disruption Event, and, likewise, would require DTC to notify its Participants and Pledges if it has triggered the Proposed Rule and of actions taken or intended to be taken thereunder.

Finally, the Proposed Rule would address other related matters, including a limitation of liability for any failure or delay in performance, in whole or in part, arising out of the Market Disruption Event. The purpose of the limitation of liability would be similar to the purpose of the analogous provision in the proposed Wind-down Rule, which is to facilitate and protect DTC's ability to act expeditiously in response to extraordinary events.

Expected Effect on and Management of Risk

DTC believes the proposal to adopt the R&W Plan and the Proposed Rules would enable it to better manage its risks. As described above, the Recovery Plan would identify the recovery tools and the risk management activities that DTC may use to address risks of uncovered losses or shortfalls resulting from a Participant Default and losses arising from non-default events. By creating a framework for its management of risks across an evolving stress scenario and providing a roadmap for actions it may employ to monitor and, as needed, stabilize its financial condition, the Recovery Plan

would strengthen DTC's ability to manage risk. The Wind-down Plan would also enable DTC to better manage its risks by establishing the strategy and framework for its orderly wind-down and the transfer of DTC's business, including the transfer of the securities inventory and establishment of the Participant and Pledgee securities accounts on the books of the transferee, when the Wind-down Plan is triggered. By creating clear mechanisms for the transfer of DTC's membership and business, the Wind-down Plan would facilitate continued access to DTC's critical services and minimize market impact of the transfer and enable DTC to better manage risks related to the wind-down of DTC.

DTC believes the Proposed Rules would enable it to better manage its risks by facilitating, and providing a legal basis for, the implementation of critical aspects of the R&W Plan. The Proposed Rules would provide Participants with transparency around those provisions of the R&W Plan that relate to their and DTC's rights, responsibilities and obligations. Therefore, DTC believes the Proposed Rules would enable it to better manage its risks by providing this transparency and creating some certainty, to the extent practicable, around the occurrence of a Market Disruption Event (as such term is defined in the Proposed Rule), and around the implementation of the Wind-down Plan.

Consistency with the Clearing Supervision Act

The stated purpose of Title VIII of the Clearing Supervision Act is to mitigate systemic risk in the financial system and promote financial stability by, among other things, promoting uniform risk management standards for systemically important financial market utilities and strengthening the liquidity of systemically important financial market utilities.⁵¹ Section 805(a)(2) of the Clearing Supervision Act⁵² also

⁵¹ 12 U.S.C. 5461(b).

authorizes the Commission to prescribe risk management standards for the payment, clearing, and settlement activities of designated clearing entities, like DTC, for which the Commission is the supervisory agency. Section 805(b) of the Clearing Supervision Act⁵³ states that the objectives and principles for risk management standards prescribed under Section 805(a) shall be to promote robust risk management, promote safety and soundness, reduce systemic risks, and support the stability of the broader financial system.

DTC believes that the proposed change is consistent with Section 805(b) of the Clearing Supervision Act because it is designed to address each of these objectives. The Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule would promote robust risk management and would reduce systemic risks by providing DTC with a roadmap for actions it may employ to monitor and manage its risks, and, as needed, to stabilize its financial condition in the event those risks materialize. Further, the Recovery Plan would identify the triggers of recovery tools, but would not provide that those triggers necessitate the use of that tool. Instead, the Recovery Plan would provide that the triggers of these tools lead to escalation to an appropriate management body, which would have authority and flexibility to respond appropriately to the situation. Essentially, the Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule are designed to minimize losses to both DTC and its Participants by giving DTC the ability to determine the most appropriate way to address each stress situation. This approach would allow for proper evaluation of the situation and the possible impacts of the use of a recovery tool in order

⁵² Id. at 5464(a)(2).

⁵³ Id. at 5464(b).

to minimize the negative effects of the stress situation, and would reduce systemic risks related to the implementation of the Recovery Plan and the underlying recovery tools.

The Wind-down Plan and the proposed Wind-down Rule, which would facilitate the implementation of the Wind-down Plan, would promote safety and soundness and would support the stability of the broader financial system because they would establish a framework for the orderly wind-down of DTC's business and would set forth clear mechanics for the transfer of its critical services and membership as well as clear provisions concerning the transfer of the securities inventory that DTC holds in fungible bulk on behalf of its Participants. By designing the Wind-down Plan and the proposed Wind-down Rule to provide for the continued access to DTC's critical services and membership, DTC believes they would promote safety and soundness and would support stability in the broader financial system in the event the Wind-down Plan is implemented.

By assisting DTC to promote robust risk management, promote safety and soundness, reduce systemic risks, and support the stability of the broader financial system, as described above, DTC believes the proposal is consistent with Section 805(b) of the Clearing Supervision Act.⁵⁴

DTC also believes that the proposal is consistent with the requirements of the Act and the rules and regulations thereunder applicable to a registered clearing agency. In particular, DTC believes that the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with Section 17A(b)(3)(F) of the Act,⁵⁵ the R&W Plan and each of the

⁵⁴ Id.

⁵⁵ 15 U.S.C. 78q-1(b)(3)(F).

Proposed Rules are consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act,⁵⁶ and the R&W Plan is consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii) under the Act,⁵⁷ for the reasons described below.

Section 17A(b)(3)(F) of the Act requires, in part, that the rules of DTC be designed to promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions, and to assure the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible.⁵⁸ The Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule would promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions by providing DTC with a roadmap for actions it may employ to mitigate losses, and monitor and, as needed, stabilize, its financial condition, which would allow it to continue its critical clearance and settlement services in stress situations. Further, as described above, the Recovery Plan is designed to identify the actions and tools DTC may use to address and minimize losses to both DTC and its Participants. The Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule would provide DTC's management and the Board with guidance in this regard by identifying the indicators and governance around the use and application of such tools to enable them to address stress situations in a manner most appropriate for the circumstances. Therefore, the Recovery Plan and the proposed Force Majeure Rule would also contribute to the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible by enabling actions that would address and minimize losses.

⁵⁶ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

⁵⁷ Id. at 240.17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii).

⁵⁸ 15 U.S.C. 78q-1(b)(3)(F).

The Wind-down Plan and the proposed Wind-down Rule, which would facilitate the implementation of the Wind-down Plan, would also promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions and assure the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible. The Wind-down Plan and the proposed Wind-down Rule would collectively establish a framework for the transfer and orderly wind-down of DTC's business. These proposals would establish clear mechanisms for the transfer of DTC's critical services and membership as well as clear provision for the transfer of the securities inventory it holds in fungible bulk for Participants. By doing so, the Wind-down Plan and these Proposed Rules are designed to facilitate the continuity of DTC's critical services and enable its Participants and Pledges to maintain access to DTC's services through the transfer of its membership in the event DTC defaults or the Wind-down Plan is triggered by the Board. Therefore, by facilitating the continuity of DTC's critical clearance and settlement services, DTC believes the proposals would promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions. Further, by creating a framework for the transfer and orderly wind-down of DTC's business, DTC believes the proposals would enhance the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of DTC or for which it is responsible.

Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with the requirements of Section 17A(b)(3)(F) of the Act.⁵⁹

Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Act requires DTC to establish, implement, maintain and enforce written policies and procedures reasonably designed to maintain a

⁵⁹

Id.

sound risk management framework for comprehensively managing legal, credit, liquidity, operational, general business, investment, custody, and other risks that arise in or are borne by the covered clearing agency, which includes plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of the covered clearing agency necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses.⁶⁰ The R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are designed to meet the requirements of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

The R&W Plan would be maintained by DTC in compliance with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) in that it provides plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of DTC necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses, as described above.⁶¹ Specifically, the Recovery Plan would define the risk management activities, stress conditions and indicators, and tools that DTC may use to address stress scenarios that could eventually prevent it from being able to provide its critical services as a going concern. Through the framework of the Crisis Continuum, the Recovery Plan would address measures that DTC may take to address risks of credit losses and liquidity shortfalls, and other losses that could arise from a Participant Default. The Recovery Plan would also address the management of general business risks and other non-default risks that could lead to losses.

The Wind-down Plan would be triggered by a determination by the Board that recovery efforts have not been, or are unlikely to be, successful in returning DTC to viability as a going concern. Once triggered, the Wind-down Plan would set forth clear

⁶⁰ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

⁶¹ Id.

mechanisms for the transfer of DTC's membership and business, and would be designed to facilitate continued access to DTC's critical services and to minimize market impact of the transfer. By establishing the framework and strategy for the execution of the transfer and wind-down of DTC in order to facilitate continuous access to DTC's critical services, the Wind-down Plan establishes a plan for the orderly wind-down of DTC. Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan would provide plans for the recovery and orderly wind-down of the covered clearing agency necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk, or any other losses, and, as such, meets the requirements of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁶²

As described in greater detail above, the Proposed Rules are designed to facilitate the execution of the R&W Plan, provide Participants with transparency regarding the material provisions of the Plan, and provide DTC with a legal basis for implementation of those provisions. As such, DTC also believes the Proposed Rules meet the requirements of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁶³

DTC has evaluated the recovery tools that would be identified in the Recovery Plan and has determined that these tools are comprehensive, effective, and transparent, and that such tools provide appropriate incentives to DTC's Participants to manage the risks they present. The recovery tools, as outlined in the Recovery Plan and in the proposed Force Majeure Rule, provide DTC with a comprehensive set of options to address its material risks and support the resiliency of its critical services under a range of stress scenarios. DTC also believes the recovery tools are effective, as DTC has both

⁶² Id.

⁶³ Id.

legal basis and operational capability to execute these tools in a timely and reliable manner. Many of the recovery tools are provided for in the Rules; Participants are bound by the Rules through their Participants Agreements with DTC, and the Rules are adopted pursuant to a framework established by Rule 19b-4 under the Act,⁶⁴ providing a legal basis for the recovery tools found therein. Other recovery tools have legal basis in contractual arrangements to which DTC is a party, as described above. Further, as many of the tools are embedded in DTC's ongoing risk management practices or are embedded into its predefined default-management procedures, DTC is able to execute these tools, in most cases, when needed and without material operational or organizational delay.

The majority of the recovery tools are also transparent, as they are or are proposed to be included in the Rules, which are publicly available. DTC believes the recovery tools also provide appropriate incentives to its owners and Participants, as they are designed to control the amount of risk they present to DTC's clearance and settlement system. Finally, DTC's Recovery Plan provides for a continuous evaluation of the systemic consequences of executing its recovery tools, with the goal of minimizing their negative impact. The Recovery Plan would outline various indicators over a timeline of increasing stress, the Crisis Continuum, with escalation triggers to DTC management or the Board, as appropriate. This approach would allow for timely evaluation of the situation and the possible impacts of the use of a recovery tool in order to minimize the negative effects of the stress scenario. Therefore, DTC believes that the recovery tools that would be identified and described in its Recovery Plan, including the authority provided to it in the proposed Force Majeure Rule, would meet the criteria identified

⁶⁴ Id. at 240.19b-4.

within guidance published by the Commission in connection with the adoption of Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁶⁵

Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan and each of the Proposed Rules are consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).⁶⁶

Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii) under the Act requires DTC to establish, implement, maintain and enforce written policies and procedures reasonably designed to identify, monitor, and manage its general business risk and hold sufficient LNA to cover potential general business losses so that DTC can continue operations and services as a going concern if those losses materialize, including by holding LNA equal to the greater of either (x) six months of the covered clearing agency's current operating expenses, or (y) the amount determined by the board of directors to be sufficient to ensure a recovery or orderly wind-down of critical operations and services of the covered clearing agency.⁶⁷

While the Capital Policy addresses how DTC holds LNA in compliance with these requirements, the Wind-down Plan would include an analysis that would estimate the amount of time and the costs to achieve a recovery or orderly wind-down of DTC's critical operations and services, and would provide that the Board review and approve this analysis and estimation annually. The Wind-down Plan would also provide that the estimate would be the "Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement" under the Capital Policy. Under that policy, the General Business Risk Capital Requirement, which is the sufficient amount of LNA that DTC should hold to cover potential general business

⁶⁵ Supra note 41.

⁶⁶ 17 CFR 240.17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii).

⁶⁷ Id. at 240.17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii).

losses so that it can continue operations and services as a going concern if those losses materialize, is calculated as the greatest of three estimated amounts, one of which is this Recovery/Wind-down Capital Requirement. Therefore, DTC believes the R&W Plan, as it interrelates with the Capital Policy, is consistent with Rule 17Ad-22(e)(15)(ii).⁶⁸

III. Date of Effectiveness of the Advance Notice, and Timing for Commission Action

The proposed change may be implemented if the Commission does not object to the proposed change within 60 days of the later of (i) the date that the proposed change was filed with the Commission or (ii) the date that any additional information requested by the Commission is received. The clearing agency shall not implement the proposed change if the Commission has any objection to the proposed change.

The Commission may extend the period for review by an additional 60 days if the proposed change raises novel or complex issues, subject to the Commission providing the clearing agency with prompt written notice of the extension. A proposed change may be implemented in less than 60 days from the date the advance notice is filed, or the date further information requested by the Commission is received, if the Commission notifies the clearing agency in writing that it does not object to the proposed change and authorizes the clearing agency to implement the proposed change on an earlier date, subject to any conditions imposed by the Commission.

The clearing agency shall post notice on its website of proposed changes that are implemented.

The proposal shall not take effect until all regulatory actions required with respect to the proposal are completed.

⁶⁸

Id.

IV. Solicitation of Comments

Interested persons are invited to submit written data, views and arguments concerning the foregoing, including whether the Advance Notice is consistent with the Clearing Supervision Act. Comments may be submitted by any of the following methods:

Electronic Comments:

- Use the Commission's Internet comment form (<http://www.sec.gov/rules/sro.shtml>); or
- Send an e-mail to rule-comments@sec.gov. Please include File Number SR-DTC-2017-803 on the subject line.

Paper Comments:

- Send paper comments in triplicate to Secretary, Securities and Exchange Commission, 100 F Street, NE, Washington, DC 20549.

All submissions should refer to File Number SR-DTC-2017-803. This file number should be included on the subject line if e-mail is used. To help the Commission process and review your comments more efficiently, please use only one method. The Commission will post all comments on the Commission's Internet website (<http://www.sec.gov/rules/sro.shtml>). Copies of the submission, all subsequent amendments, all written statements with respect to the Advance Notice that are filed with the Commission, and all written communications relating to the Advance Notice between the Commission and any person, other than those that may be withheld from the public in accordance with the provisions of 5 U.S.C. 552, will be available for website viewing and printing in the Commission's Public Reference Room, 100 F Street, NE, Washington, DC

20549 on official business days between the hours of 10:00 a.m. and 3:00 p.m. Copies of the filing also will be available for inspection and copying at the principal office of DTC and on DTCC's website (<http://dtcc.com/legal/sec-rule-filings.aspx>). All comments received will be posted without change. Persons submitting comments are cautioned that we do not redact or edit personal identifying information from comment submissions. You should submit only information that you wish to make available publicly. All submissions should refer to File Number SR-DTC-2017-803 and should be submitted on or before [insert date 21 days from publication in the Federal Register].

By the Commission.

Secretary

PAGE REDACTED IN ITS ENTIRETY

Bold and underlined text indicates proposed added language
~~Bold and strikethrough text~~ indicates proposed deleted language

RULE 32(A)

WIND-DOWN OF THE CORPORATION

Section 1. Defined Terms

(a) For purposes of this Rule 32(A):

“Bridge Entity” has the meaning given to such term in the definition of “Transferee” in this Section 1(a).

“Business” means the Critical Services and any Non-Critical Services of the Corporation included in a Transfer.

“Cede” means Cede & Co., a New York general partnership that is the record owner of the financial assets held by the Corporation in fungible bulk for Participants of the Corporation.

“Comparability Period” means a period of time following the Transfer, to be agreed between the Corporation and a Transferee, during which the Business transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee shall be operated by the Transferee in a manner comparable to the manner in which the Business was previously operated by the Corporation, as more specifically set forth in Section 9 of this Rule 32(A).

“Critical Services” means the services of the Corporation described in the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation that have been identified as critical services in the Recovery and Wind-down Plan.

“Delinquent Participant” means a Participant of the Corporation that is delinquent in the performance of any of its obligations to the Corporation (as determined by the Corporation).

“DRS Agent” means a transfer agent that participates in the direct registration service of the Corporation or a transfer agent that participates in the direct registration service of the Transferee, as the context requires.

“DRS Agent Agreement” means the form of agreement between a DRS Agent and the Corporation or between a DRS Agent and the Transferee, as the context requires, providing, *inter alia*, for the DRS Agent to be bound by

the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation or the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, as applicable to such DRS Agent.

“DTCC” means The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation.

“Eligible Participant” means a Participant of the Corporation other than a Non-Eligible Participant.

“Failover Entity” has the meaning given to such term in the definition of “Transferee” in this Section 1(a).

“FAST Agent” means a transfer agent that holds balance certificates for the Corporation or a transfer agent that holds balance certificates for the Transferee, as the context requires.

“FAST Agent Agreement” means the form of agreement between a FAST Agent and the Corporation or between a FAST Agent and the Transferee, as the context requires, providing, *inter alia*, for the FAST Agent to be bound by the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation or the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, as applicable to such FAST Agent.

“Last Activity Date” has the meaning given to such term in Section 2(c)(2) of this Rule 32(A).

“Non-Critical Services” means the services of the Corporation described in the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation other than the Critical Services.

“Non-Eligible Participant” means a Participant of the Corporation that is a Delinquent Participant or Withdrawing Participant.

“Participant” means a Participant of the Corporation or a Participant of the Transferee, as the context requires.

“Participant Agreement” means the form of agreement between a Participant and the Corporation or between a Participant and the Transferee, as the context requires, providing, *inter alia*, for the Participant to be bound by the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation or the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, as applicable to such Participant.

“Pledgee” means a Pledgee for the pledge of securities at the Corporation or a Pledgee for the pledge of securities at the Transferee, as the context requires.

“Pledgee Agreement” means the form of agreement between a Pledgee and the Corporation or between a Pledgee and the Transferee, as the context requires, providing, *inter alia*, for the Pledgee to be bound by the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation or the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, as applicable to such Pledgee.

“Procedures” means the service guides, operational arrangements and other procedures of the Corporation or the service guides, operational arrangements and other procedures of the Transferee, as the context requires.

“Recovery and Wind-down Plan” means the plan for the recovery and orderly wind-down of the Corporation necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk or any other losses, adopted by the Corporation pursuant to Rule 17Ad-22(e)(3)(ii) under the Exchange Act.

“Recovery Plan” means the portion of the Recovery and Wind-down Plan addressing recovery.

“Rules” means the Rules of the Corporation or the Rules of the Transferee, as the context requires.

“Settling Bank” means a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledges of the Corporation or a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledges of the Transferee, as the context requires.

“Settling Bank Agreement” means the form of agreement between a Settling Bank and the Corporation or between a Settling Bank and the Transferee, as the context requires, providing, *inter alia*, for the Settling Bank to be bound by the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation or the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, as applicable to such Settling Bank.

“Third Party Entity” has the meaning given to such term in the definition of “Transferee” in this Section 1(a).

“Transfer” means a transfer of the Business of the Corporation pursuant to the Wind-down Plan.

“Transferee” means an entity to which the Business of the Corporation is transferred pursuant to the Wind-down Plan, and may include (i) a failover entity established by DTCC (a “Failover Entity”), (ii) a then-existing or newly-established third party entity (a “Third Party Entity”) or (iii) a bridge entity formed to operate the Business on an interim basis (a “Bridge Entity”). The Transferee shall be an entity that is legally, financially and operationally qualified to continue to operate the Business that is to be transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee.

“Transferee Documents” means the Rules and Procedures, Participant Agreement, Transition Period Securities Account Agreement, Pledge Agreement, DRS Agent Agreement, FAST Agent Agreement and Settling Bank Agreement of the Transferee.

“Transfer Notice” has the meaning given to such term in Section 3 of this Rule 32(A).

“Transfer Time” has the meaning given to such term in Section 2(c)(1) of this Rule 32(A).

“Transition Period” means a period of time following the Transfer, to be agreed between the Corporation and a Transferee, during which the Transferee shall maintain Transition Period Securities Accounts for Transition Period Securities Account Holders, as more specifically set forth in Section 5(b) of this Rule 32(A).

“Transition Period Securities Account” means a transition period securities account maintained by the Transferee on its books, as more specifically described in Section 5(b) of this Rule 32(A).

“Transition Period Securities Account Agreement” means a transition period securities account agreement of the Transferee, as more specifically described in Section 5(b) of this Rule 32(A).

“Transition Period Securities Account Holder” means the holder of a Transition Period Securities Account.

“Wind-down Plan” means the portion of the Recovery and Wind-down Plan addressing wind-down.

“Withdrawing Participant” means a Participant of the Corporation that has given notice to the Corporation of its election to withdraw as a Participant but that, at the Transfer Time, has not yet ceased to be a Participant (as determined by the Corporation).

- (b) Capitalized terms that are used in this Rule 32(A) but not defined in Section 1(a) above shall have the meanings given to such terms in other Rules and Procedures of the Corporation.**

Section 2. Initiation of Wind-down Plan

- (a) The Board of Directors may authorize the initiation of the Wind-down Plan and a transfer of the Business from the Corporation to a Transferee if the Board of Directors determines, in the exercise of its business judgment and subject to its fiduciary duties:**

- (1) that the application of some or all of the recovery tools set forth in the Recovery Plan, necessitated by credit losses, liquidity shortfalls, losses from general business risk or any other losses:**

- A. has not restored the Corporation to viability as a going concern, able to continue to provide its Critical Services to Participants and Pledgees of the Corporation in a safe and efficient manner; or**

B. will not likely restore the Corporation to viability as a going concern, able to continue to provide its Critical Services to Participants and Pledges of the Corporation in a safe and efficient manner; and

(2) that the implementation of the Wind-down Plan and a Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to a Transferee is in the best interests of the Corporation, its shareholders and creditors, Participants and Pledges and the US financial markets.

(b) The Board of Directors shall identify:

(1) the Critical Services and any Non-Critical Services that shall be transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee at the Transfer Time; and

(2) any Non-Critical Services that shall not be transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee.

The Critical Services and any Non-Critical Services that are transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee at the Transfer Time shall be provided by the Transferee following the Transfer Time. Any Non-Critical Services that are not transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee shall be terminated at the Transfer Time.

(c) The Board of Directors shall establish:

(1) the date and time (the “Transfer Time”) of the Transfer; and

(2) the last day that instructions in respect of securities and other financial products (e.g., instructions in respect of transfers, pledges, deposits, withdrawals and other transactions) may be effectuated through the facilities of the Corporation (the “Last Activity Date”).

The Corporation shall not accept any transactions for settlement after the Last Activity Date. All transactions to be settled after the Transfer Time shall be submitted to the Transferee in accordance with the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, and the Corporation shall have no responsibility for such transactions.

Section 3. Notice of Transfer of the Business

If the Board of Directors determines to implement a Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to a Transferee in accordance with this Rule 32(A) and the terms and conditions of the Wind-down Plan, the Corporation shall, in such manner as may be provided by the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation and subject to any required regulatory or judicial approval or consent:

- (a) provide Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks with a notice (a “Transfer Notice”) setting forth:**
- (1) the decision taken by the Board of Directors to Transfer the Business from the Corporation to the Transferee and a brief statement of the reasons therefor;**
 - (2) the name of the Transferee and basic information about the Transferee;**
 - (3) a description of the material financial and operational terms of the Transfer;**
 - (4) the (i) Transfer Time and (ii) Last Activity Date;**
 - (5) a summary of the matters described in Sections 4 through 8 of this Rule 32(A);**
 - (6) a list setting forth (i) which Participants of the Corporation are Eligible Participants and (ii) which Participants of the Corporation are Non-Eligible Participants; and**
 - (7) a list setting forth (i) the Critical Services and any Non-Critical Services that will be transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee at the Transfer Time and (ii) any Non-Critical Services that will not be transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee; and**
- (b) make available to Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks a copy of the Transferee Documents.**

No delay or failure on the part of the Corporation to provide a Transfer Notice or make available a copy of the Transferee Documents to any Participant, Pledgee, DRS Agent, FAST Agent or Settling Bank shall alter the timing or effectiveness of the Transfer. The Corporation shall also furnish the Transfer Notice and a copy of the Transferee Documents to its regulators.

Section 4. Transfer of Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks

Prior to the Transfer Time, the Corporation shall enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Failover Entity, or shall use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Third Party Entity or Bridge Entity, providing in either case that, at the Transfer Time, by operation of this Rule 32(A) and with no further action required by any party:

- (a) each Eligible Participant of the Corporation shall become (i) a Participant of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Participant Agreement with the Transferee;**
- (b) each Non-Eligible Participant of the Corporation shall become (i) a Transition Period Securities Account Holder of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Transition Period Securities Account Agreement with the Transferee;**
- (c) each Pledgee of the Corporation shall become (i) a Pledgee of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Pledgee Agreement with the Transferee;**
- (d) each DRS Agent of the Corporation shall become (i) a DRS Agent of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a DRS Agent Agreement with the Transferee;**
- (e) each FAST Agent of the Corporation shall become (i) a FAST Agent of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a FAST Agent Agreement with the Transferee; and**
- (f) each Settling Bank for Participants and Pledgees of the Corporation shall become (i) a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledgees of the Transferee and (ii) a party to a Settling Bank Agreement with the Transferee.**

Section 5. Status of Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks

Prior to the Transfer Time, the Corporation shall enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Failover Entity, or shall use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Third Party Entity or Bridge Entity, providing in either case that, from and after the Transfer Time:

- (a) An Eligible Participant of the Corporation that has become a Participant of the Transferee shall have all of the rights and be subject to all of the obligations of a Participant set forth in the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, including the legal, financial, operational and collateral requirements of the Transferee applicable to such Participant.**
- (b) A Non-Eligible Participant of the Corporation that has become a Transition Period Securities Account Holder of the Transferee shall have the rights and be subject to the obligations of a Transition Period Securities Account Holder set forth in special provisions of the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee applicable to such Transition Period Securities Account Holder. Pursuant to such special provisions, a Transition Period Securities Account Holder must, *inter alia*, within the Transition Period, instruct the Transferee to transfer the financial assets credited to its Transition Period Securities Account (i) to a Participant of the Transferee through the facilities of the Transferee or (ii) to a recipient outside the facilities of the Transferee. No additional financial assets may be delivered versus payment to a Transition**

Period Securities Account during the Transition Period. At the end of the Transition Period, the Transition Period Securities Account Holder shall cease to be a Transition Period Securities Account Holder and its business relationship with the Transferee as a Transition Period Securities Account Holder shall be terminated, subject to any continuing obligations of such Transition Period Securities Account Holder to the Transferee set forth in the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee.

- (c) A Pledgee of the Corporation that has become a Pledgee of the Transferee shall have all of the rights and be subject to all of the obligations of a Pledgee set forth in the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, including the legal, financial and operational requirements of the Transferee applicable to such Pledgee.
- (d) A DRS Agent of the Corporation that has become a DRS Agent of the Transferee shall have all of the rights and be subject to all of the obligations of a DRS Agent set forth in the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, including the operational requirements of the Transferee applicable to such DRS Agent.
- (e) A FAST Agent of the Corporation that has become a FAST Agent of the Transferee shall have all of the rights and be subject to all of the obligations of a FAST Agent set forth in the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, including the operational requirements of the Transferee applicable to such FAST Agent.
- (f) A Settling Bank for Participants and Pledgees of the Corporation that has become a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledgees of the Transferee shall have all of the rights and be subject to all of the obligations of a Settling Bank set forth in the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee, including the operational requirements of the Transferee applicable to such Settling Bank.

Section 6. Right of Non-Eligible Participants to Apply to the Transferee

Nothing contained in this Rule 32(A) shall preclude a Non-Eligible Participant of the Corporation from applying after the Transfer Time to become a Participant of the Transferee in accordance with such eligibility requirements and procedures as may be prescribed by the Transferee, but such Non-Eligible Participant shall not have the benefit of the automatic admission arrangements set forth in Section 4(a) of this Rule 32(A).

Section 7. Right to Withdraw from the Transferee

Nothing contained in this Rule 32(A) shall:

- (a) preclude an Eligible Participant of the Corporation that has become a Participant of the Transferee pursuant to Section 4(a) of this Rule 32(A) from electing to withdraw as a Participant from the Transferee at any time

after the Transfer Time, subject to the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee;

- (b) preclude a Non-Eligible Participant of the Corporation that has become a Transition Period Securities Account Holder of the Transferee pursuant to Section 4(b) of this Rule 32(A) from electing to withdraw as a Transition Period Securities Account Holder from the Transferee at any time after the Transfer Time, subject to the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee;
- (c) preclude a Pledgee of the Corporation that has become a Pledgee of the Transferee pursuant to Section 4(c) of this Rule 32(A) from electing to withdraw as a Pledgee from the Transferee at any time after the Transfer Time, subject to the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee;
- (d) preclude a DRS Agent of the Corporation that has become a DRS Agent of the Transferee pursuant to Section 4(d) of this Rule 32(A) from electing to withdraw as a DRS Agent from the Transferee at any time after the Transfer Time, subject to the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee;
- (e) preclude a FAST Agent of the Corporation that has become a FAST Agent of the Transferee pursuant to Section 4(e) of this Rule 32(A) from electing to withdraw as a FAST Agent from the Transferee at any time after the Transfer Time, subject to the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee; or
- (f) preclude a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledges of the Corporation that has become a Settling Bank for Participants and Pledges of the Transferee pursuant to Section 4(f) of this Rule 32(A) from electing to withdraw as a Settling Bank from the Transferee at any time after the Transfer Time, subject to the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee.

Section 8. Transfer of Inventory of Financial Assets

Prior to the Transfer Time, the Corporation shall enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Failover Entity, or shall use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Third Party Entity or Bridge Entity, providing in either case that, at the Transfer Time:

- (a) The Corporation shall transfer to the Transferee (i) its rights with respect to Cede (and thereby its rights with respect to the financial assets owned of record by Cede), (ii) the financial assets held by the Corporation at the Federal Reserve Bank of New York, (iii) the financial assets held by the Corporation at other central securities depositories, (iv) the financial assets held in custody for the Corporation with FAST Agents of the Corporation, (v) the financial assets held in custody for the Corporation with other custodians and (vi) the financial assets held in physical custody by the Corporation.

- (b) The Transferee shall establish security entitlements on its books for Eligible Participants of the Corporation that become Participants of the Transferee that replicate the security entitlements that the Corporation maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time for such Eligible Participants, and the Corporation shall simultaneously eliminate such security entitlements from its books. As a result, there shall be no interruption in the right that a Participant has to give entitlement orders for the transfer or redemption of financial assets between the time that security entitlements with respect to such financial assets are established on the books of the Transferee and the time that security entitlements with respect to such financial assets are eliminated from the books of the Corporation.**
- (c) The Transferee shall establish security entitlements on its books for Non-Eligible Participants of the Corporation that become Transition Period Securities Account Holders of the Transferee that replicate the security entitlements that the Corporation maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time for such Non-Eligible Participants, and the Corporation shall simultaneously eliminate such security entitlements from its books. As a result, there shall be no interruption in the right that a Transition Period Securities Account Holder has to give entitlement orders for the transfer or redemption of financial assets between the time that security entitlements with respect to such financial assets are established on the books of the Transferee and the time that security entitlements with respect to such financial assets are eliminated from the books of the Corporation.**
- (d) The Transferee shall establish pledges on its books in favor of Pledges of the Corporation that become Pledges of the Transferee that replicate the pledges that the Corporation maintained on its books immediately prior to the Transfer Time in favor of such Pledges, and the Corporation shall simultaneously eliminate such pledges from its books. As a result, there shall be no interruption in the control that a Pledgee has over financial assets between the time that pledges with respect to such financial assets are established on the books of the Transferee and the time that pledges with respect to such financial assets are eliminated from the books of the Corporation.**

Section 9. Certain Ex Ante Matters

Prior to the Transfer Time, the Corporation shall enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Failover Entity, or shall use commercially reasonable efforts to enter into arrangements with a Transferee that is a Third Party Entity or Bridge Entity, providing in either case that, with respect to the Critical Services and any Non-Critical Services that are transferred from the Corporation to the Transferee, for at least the duration of the Comparability Period, in order to facilitate a smooth Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to the Transferee:

- (a) the Rules and Procedures, Participant Agreement, Pledgee Agreement, DRS Agent Agreement, FAST Agent Agreement and Settling Bank Agreement of the Transferee shall be comparable in substance and effect to the Rules and Procedures, Participant Agreement, Pledgee Agreement, DRS Agent Agreement, FAST Agent Agreement and Settling Bank Agreement of the Corporation;**
- (b) the rights and obligations of Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks of the Transferee under the Rules and Procedures of the Transferee shall be comparable in substance and effect to the rights and obligations of Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks of the Corporation under the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation; and**
- (c) the Critical Services and any Non-Critical Services provided by the Transferee shall be provided in a manner that is comparable in substance and effect to the manner in which such Critical Services and Non-Critical Services were provided by the Corporation.**

Section 10. Subordination of Claims

In the event of any insolvency of the Corporation following the commencement of any Event Period (as defined in Rule 4), the unsecured claims (if any) of Participants of the Corporation that failed to pay or perform any obligation to the Corporation or elected to withdraw as Participants from and after such time shall (i) rank *pari passu* with each other and (ii) be subordinate to the claims of other unsecured creditors of the Corporation.

Section 11. Further Assurances; Additional Powers; Miscellaneous Matters

- (a) Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks of the Corporation shall assist and cooperate with the Corporation to effectuate any Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to a Transferee, including without limitation (i) by complying with the terms and conditions of this Rule 32(A) and their obligations hereunder and (ii) by providing the Corporation and the Transferee with such financial and operational information as they may request. The Corporation may provide to a Transferee any financial and operational information it has with respect to Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks of the Corporation as may be necessary and appropriate to effectuate an orderly Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to the Transferee.**
- (b) The Corporation may take such other actions and enter into such other arrangements (on behalf of itself and its Participants, Pledgees, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks) as may be necessary and appropriate to effectuate an orderly Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to a Transferee, and otherwise accomplish the purposes of the Wind-down Plan.**

- (c) As a condition to receiving, and by virtue of accepting, the continuing benefits of being Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks of the Corporation, such Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks (i) hereby expressly agree to the arrangements set forth in this Rule 32(A) relating to their becoming Participants, Transition Period Securities Account Holders, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks, as the case may be, of the Transferee in the circumstances described herein and (ii) hereby expressly grant to the Corporation an irrevocable power of attorney to execute and deliver on their behalf such documents and instruments as the Transferee may request for this purpose. As Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks of the Corporation, such Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks are subject to the Rules and Procedures of the Corporation.**
- (d) No actions taken or omitted to be taken by the Corporation pursuant to this Rule 32(A) shall be deemed to constitute a default by the Corporation in the performance of any of its other obligations to Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks of the Corporation pursuant to any other Rules and Procedures of the Corporation.**
- (e) The Corporation shall have no liability to any Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents or Settling Banks of the Corporation for any actions taken or omitted to be taken by the Corporation pursuant to this Rule 32(A).**
- (f) The Corporation shall have no liability to any third parties, including any customers or clients of any Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents or Settling Banks of the Corporation, for any actions taken or omitted to be taken by the Corporation pursuant to this Rule 32(A).**
- (g) In connection with the Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to the Transferee, (i) the Corporation shall assign all of its Participant Agreements, Pledge Agreements, DRS Agent Agreements, FAST Agent Agreements and Settling Bank Agreements to the Transferee and (ii) the Transferee shall assume such Participant Agreements, Pledge Agreements, DRS Agent Agreements, FAST Agent Agreements and Settling Bank Agreements.**
- (h) All rights of the Corporation that are not assigned to the Transferee in connection with the Transfer of the Business from the Corporation to the Transferee, including any claims of the Corporation against Participants, Pledges, DRS Agents, FAST Agents and Settling Banks arising at any time prior to the Transfer Time, shall remain rights of the Corporation, enforceable by the Corporation in accordance with their terms and subject to applicable law (including insolvency law).**
- (i) All obligations and liabilities of the Corporation that are not assigned to and assumed by the Transferee in connection with the Transfer of the Business**

from the Corporation to the Transferee shall remain obligations and liabilities of the Corporation, enforceable against the Corporation in accordance with their terms and subject to applicable law (including insolvency law).

- (i) In the event of any conflict between the provisions of this Rule 32(A) and any other Rules and Procedures of the Corporation, the provisions of this Rule 32(A) shall prevail.**

* * *

RULE 38

Market Disruption and Force Majeure

Section 1. Market Disruption Events

On the happening of any one or more of the events or circumstances set out below (each a “Market Disruption Event”) which, in any case, is likely to materially affect or has materially affected the business, operations, safeguarding of securities or funds, or physical functions of the Corporation, including performance by the Corporation of any obligations under these Rules and Procedures, the Corporation shall be entitled to take such action as is set out in this Rule 38:

- (a) a general suspension or limitation of trading on the New York Stock Exchange, NASDAQ, or any other exchange or market relevant to the pricing or trading of securities settled through the Corporation;
- (b) the declaration of a trading or banking moratorium in the United States or New York State;
- (c) any international organization, the government of any nation, state, or territory, or any institution or agency thereof, or any self-regulatory organization taking action of a nature likely to affect the normal course of business, including performance by the Corporation of obligations under these Rules and Procedures;
- (d) the unavailability, failure, malfunction, overload, or restriction (whether partial or total) of any payment, bank transfer or wire, or securities settlement system;
- (e) the unavailability, failure, malfunction, overload, or restriction (whether partial or total) of any cash or securities depository, custodian or clearing bank, or any material variation of such depository’s, custodian’s or clearing bank’s processing or turnaround times, whether or not occasioned by action of such depository, custodian or clearing bank; or
- (f) any Force Majeure, which shall include (without limitation) any terrorist or other criminal action, war or hostilities between any nations, national emergency, riot, civil unrest, acts of God or the public enemy, fire or other casualty, flood, accident, disaster (including any nuclear, atomic, environmental, or natural disaster), sabotage, bomb threat, labor dispute, embargo, the unavailability, failure, malfunction, or restriction of communication, computer, or data processing systems or facilities, or of software or technology, cyber attack, lack of transportation facilities, interruption (whether partial or total) of power supplies or other utility or service, or any event, situation, or circumstance beyond the reasonable control of the parties (whether or not similar to any of the foregoing), including those imminent or threatened.

Section 2. Powers of the Corporation

If the Board of Directors or any officer of the Corporation listed below determines, in its, his, or her judgment that there is a Market Disruption Event, the Corporation shall be entitled to act (or refrain from acting) as prescribed in Section 3 of this Rule 38. To the extent practicable, the determination of the existence of a Market Disruption Event, and the actions to be taken in response thereto, shall be made by the Board of Directors at a meeting where a quorum is present and acting. However, if the Corporation is unable to convene a Board of Directors meeting promptly and timely in such event, then such determination may be made by either the Chief Executive Officer, the Chief Financial Officer, the Group Chief Risk Officer, or the General Counsel, or by any management committee on which all of the foregoing officers serves (an “Officer Market Disruption Event Action”), provided that the Corporation shall convene a Board of Directors meeting as soon as practicable thereafter (and in any event within 5 Business Days following such determination) to ratify, modify or rescind such Officer Market Disruption Event Action.

Section 3. Authority to take Actions

Upon the determination that there is a Market Disruption Event, the Corporation shall be entitled, during the pendency of such Market Disruption Event, to:

- (a) suspend the provision of any or all services of the Corporation; and**
- (b) take, or refrain from taking, or require Participants and/or Pledges (whether or not they are affected by the Market Disruption Event) to take or refrain from taking, any and all action which the Corporation considers appropriate to prevent, address, correct, mitigate or alleviate the event and facilitate the continuation of services as may be practicable, and, in that context, issue instructions to Participants and/or Pledges.**

Section 4. Notifications

4.1 Each Participant and Pledgee shall notify the Corporation immediately upon becoming aware of any Market Disruption Event.

4.2 The Corporation shall promptly notify Participants and Pledgees of any action the Corporation takes or intends to take pursuant to Section 3 of this Rule 38.

4.3 The Corporation shall attempt to consult with officials of the SEC prior to the Corporation taking any action pursuant to Section 3 of this Rule 38; provided, however, that the authority contained herein shall not be conditioned by such consultation.

The Corporation shall advise the SEC as soon as practicable by telephone, and confirmed in writing, of any action taken by the Corporation pursuant to Section 3 of this Rule 38, and a record of such writing shall be promptly made and filed with the Corporation’s

records and shall be available for inspection by any Participant or Pledgee during regular business hours on Business Days.

The Corporation shall also advise the SEC as soon as practicable by telephone, and confirmed in writing, at such time it determines that there is no longer a Market Disruption Event and the Corporation terminates the actions taken by the Corporation pursuant to Section 3 of this Rule 38. A record of such writing shall be promptly made and filed with the Corporation's records and shall be available for inspection by any Participant or Pledgee during regular business hours on Business Days.

Section 5. Certain Miscellaneous Matters

- (a) Without limiting any other provisions in these Rules and Procedures concerning limitations on liability, none of the Corporation, its directors, officers, employees, agents, or contractors shall be liable to a Participant, Pledgee or any other person (including any customer or client thereof) for:
- (i) any failure, hindrance, interruption or delay in performance in whole or in part of the obligations of the Corporation under the Rules or Procedures, if that failure, hindrance, interruption or delay arises out of or relates to a Market Disruption Event; or
 - (ii) any loss, liability, damage, cost or expense arising from or relating in any way to any actions taken, or omitted to be taken, pursuant to this Rule 38.
- (b) The power of the Corporation to take any action pursuant to this Rule 38 also includes the power to repeal, rescind, revoke, amend, or vary any such action.
- (c) The powers of the Corporation pursuant to this Rule 38 shall be in addition to, and not in derogation of, authority granted elsewhere in these Rules and Procedures to take action as specified therein.
- (d) In the event of any conflict between the provisions of this Rule 38 and any other Rules or Procedures, the provisions of this Rule 38 shall prevail.